

## HERBICIDE TOLERANT PROTOX GENES PRODUCED BY DNA SHUFFLING

This application is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Application No. 09/059,164, filed April 13, 1998, which is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Application No. 09/050,603, filed March 30, 1998, which is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Application No. 08/808,931, filed February 28, 1997, which is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Application No. 08/472,028, filed June 6, 1995, now U.S. Patent No. 5,767,373, issued June 16, 1998, which is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Application No. 08/261,198, filed June 16, 1994, now abandoned. Said U.S. Application No. 08/808,931 also claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/012,705, filed February 28, 1996, U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/013,612, filed February 28, 1996, and U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/020,003, filed June 21, 1996. Said U.S. Application No. 09/059,164 is also a continuation-in-part of U.S. Application No. 09/038,878, filed March 11, 1998. All of the aforementioned applications are incorporated herein by reference.

### FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to DNA molecules encoding herbicide-tolerant forms of the enzyme protoporphyrinogen oxidase ("protox"). The invention further relates to herbicide-tolerant plants as well as methods for tissue culture selection and herbicide application based on these herbicide-tolerant forms of protox.

### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

#### I. The Protox Enzyme and its Involvement in the Chlorophyll/Heme Biosynthetic Pathway

The biosynthetic pathways that lead to the production of chlorophyll and heme share a number of common steps. Chlorophyll is a light harvesting pigment present in all green photosynthetic organisms. Heme is a cofactor of hemoglobin, cytochromes, P450 mixed-function oxygenases, peroxidases, and catalyses (*see, e.g. Lehninger, Biochemistry*, Worth Publishers, New York (1975)), and is therefore a necessary component for all aerobic organisms.

The last common step in chlorophyll and heme biosynthesis is the oxidation of protoporphyrinogen IX to protoporphyrin IX. Protoporphyrinogen oxidase (referred to herein as "protox") is the enzyme that catalyzes this last oxidation step (Matringe *et al.*, *Biochem. J.* 260: 231 (1989)).

5 The protox enzyme has been purified either partially or completely from a number of organisms including the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (Labbe-Bois and Labbe, In *Biosynthesis of Heme and Chlorophyll*, E.H. Dailey, ed. McGraw Hill: New York, pp. 235-285 (1990)), barley etioplasts (Jacobs and Jacobs, *Biochem. J.* 244: 219 (1987)), and mouse liver (Dailey and Karr, *Biochem.* 26: 2697 (1987)). Genes encoding protox have been isolated from two prokaryotic

10 organisms, *Escherichia coli* (Sasarman *et al.*, *Can. J. Microbiol.* 39: 1155 (1993)) and *Bacillus subtilis* (Dailey *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269: 813 (1994)). These genes share no sequence similarity; neither do their predicted protein products share any amino acid sequence identity. The *E. coli* protein is approximately 21 kDa, and associates with the cell membrane. The *B. subtilis* protein is 51 kDa, and is a soluble, cytoplasmic activity.

15 Protox encoding genes have now also been isolated from humans (*see* Nishimura *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 270(14): 8076-8080 (1995) and plants (International application no. PCT/IB95/00452 filed June 8, 1995, published Dec. 21, 1995 as WO 95/34659).

## II. The Protox Gene as a Herbicide Target

20 The use of herbicides to control undesirable vegetation such as weeds or plants in crops has become an almost universal practice. The relevant market exceeds a billion dollars annually. Despite this extensive use, weed control remains a significant and costly problem for farmers.

Effective use of herbicides requires sound management. For instance, time and method of application and stage of weed plant development are critical to getting good weed control with

25 herbicides. Since various weed species are resistant to herbicides, the production of effective herbicides becomes increasingly important. Novel herbicides can now be discovered using high-throughput screens that implement recombinant DNA technology. Metabolic enzymes essential to plant growth and development can be recombinantly produced through standard molecular biological techniques and utilized as herbicide targets in screens for novel inhibitors of the

enzymes' activity. The novel inhibitors discovered through such screens may then be used as herbicides to control undesirable vegetation.

Unfortunately, herbicides that exhibit greater potency, broader weed spectrum and more rapid degradation in soil can also have greater crop phytotoxicity. One solution applied to this problem has been to develop crops that are resistant or tolerant to herbicides. Crop hybrids or varieties resistant to the herbicides allow for the use of the herbicides without attendant risk of damage to the crop. Development of resistance can allow application of a herbicide to a crop where its use was previously precluded or limited (*e.g.* to pre-emergence use) due to sensitivity of the crop to the herbicide. For example, U.S. Patent No. 4,761,373, incorporated herein by reference, is directed to plants resistant to various imidazolinone or sulfonamide herbicides. The resistance is conferred by an altered acetohydroxyacid synthase (AHAS) enzyme. U.S. Patent No. 4,975,374, incorporated herein by reference, relates to plant cells and plants containing a gene encoding a mutant glutamine synthetase (GS) resistant to inhibition by herbicides that were known to inhibit GS, *e.g.* phosphinothricin and methionine sulfoximine. U.S. Patent No. 5,013,659, incorporated herein by reference, is directed to plants that express a mutant acetolactate synthase (ALS) that renders the plants resistant to inhibition by sulfonylurea herbicides. U.S. Patent No. 5,162,602, incorporated herein by reference, discloses plants tolerant to inhibition by cyclohexanedione and aryloxyphenoxypropanoic acid herbicides. The tolerance is conferred by an altered acetyl coenzyme A carboxylase (ACCase). U.S. Patent No. 5,554,798, incorporated herein by reference, discloses transgenic glyphosate resistant maize plants, which tolerance is conferred by an altered 5-enolpyruvyl-3-phosphoshikimate (EPSP) synthase gene.

The protox enzyme serves as the target for a variety of herbicidal compounds. The herbicides that inhibit protox include many different structural classes of molecules (Duke *et al.*, *Weed Sci.* 39: 465 (1991); Nandihalli *et al.*, *Pesticide Biochem. Physiol.* 43: 193 (1992); Matringe *et al.*, *FEBS Lett.* 245: 35 (1989); Yanase and Andoh, *Pesticide Biochem. Physiol.* 35: 70 (1989)). These herbicidal compounds include the diphenylethers {*e.g.* acifluorfen, 5-[2-chloro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenoxy]-2-nitrobenzoic acid; its methyl ester; or oxyfluorfen, 2-chloro-1-(3-ethoxy-4-nitrophenoxy)-4-(trifluorobenzene)}, oxidiazoles, (*e.g.* oxidiazon, 3-[2,4-dichloro-5-(1-methylethoxy)phenyl]-5-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-(3*H*)-one), cyclic imides (*e.g.* S-23142, *N*-(4-chloro-2-fluoro-5-propargyloxyphenyl)-3,4,5,6-tetrahydrophthalimide;

chlorophthalim, *N*-(4-chlorophenyl)-3,4,5,6-tetrahydrophthalimide), phenyl pyrazoles (e.g. TNPP-ethyl, ethyl 2-[1-(2,3,4-trichlorophenyl)-4-nitropirazolyl-5-oxy]propionate; M&B 39279), pyridine derivatives (e.g. LS 82-556), and phenopylate and its *O*-phenylpyrrolidino- and piperidinocarbamate analogs. Many of these compounds competitively inhibit the normal  
 5 reaction catalyzed by the enzyme, apparently acting as substrate analogs.

Typically, the inhibitory effect on protox is determined by measuring fluorescence at about 622 to 635 nm, after excitation at about 395 to 410 nM (see, *e.g.* Jacobs and Jacobs, *Enzyme* 28: 206 (1982); Sherman *et al.*, *Plant Physiol.* 97: 280 (1991)). This assay is based on the fact that protoporphyrin IX is a fluorescent pigment, and protoporphyrinogen IX is  
 10 nonfluorescent.

The predicted mode of action of protox-inhibiting herbicides involves the accumulation of protoporphyrinogen IX in the chloroplast. This accumulation is thought to lead to leakage of protoporphyrinogen IX into the cytosol where it is oxidized by a peroxidase activity to protoporphyrin IX. When exposed to light, protoporphyrin IX can cause formation of singlet  
 15 oxygen in the cytosol. This singlet oxygen can in turn lead to the formation of other reactive oxygen species, which can cause lipid peroxidation and membrane disruption leading to rapid cell death (Lee *et al.*, *Plant Physiol.* 102: 881 (1993)).

Not all protox enzymes are sensitive to herbicides that inhibit plant protox enzymes. Both of the protox enzymes encoded by genes isolated from *Escherichia coli* (Sasarman *et al.*,  
 20 *Can. J. Microbiol.* 39: 1155 (1993)) and *Bacillus subtilis* (Dailey *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269: 813 (1994)) are resistant to these herbicidal inhibitors. In addition, mutants of the unicellular alga *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* resistant to the phenylimide herbicide S-23142 have been reported (Kataoka *et al.*, *J. Pesticide Sci.* 15: 449 (1990); Shibata *et al.*, In *Research in Photosynthesis*, Vol. III, N. Murata, ed. Kluwer:Netherlands. pp. 567-570 (1992)). At least one of these mutants  
 25 appears to have an altered protox activity that is resistant not only to the herbicidal inhibitor on which the mutant was selected, but also to other classes of protox inhibitors (Oshio *et al.*, *Z. Naturforsch.* 48c: 339 (1993); Sato *et al.*, In *ACS Symposium on Porphyrin Pesticides*, S. Duke, ed. ACS Press: Washington, D.C. (1994)). A mutant tobacco cell line has also been reported that is resistant to the inhibitor S-21432 (Che *et al.*, *Z. Naturforsch.* 48c: 350 (1993)).



### III. Plastid Transformation and Expression

Plastid transformation, in which genes are inserted by homologous recombination into some or all of the several thousand copies of the circular plastid genome present in each plant cell, takes advantage of the enormous copy number advantage over nuclear-expressed genes to permit expression levels that may exceed 10% of the total soluble plant protein. In addition, plastid transformation is desirable because in most plants plastid-encoded traits are not pollen transmissible; hence, potential risks of inadvertent transgene escape to wild relatives of transgenic plants is obviated. Plastid transformation technology is extensively described in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,451,513, 5,545,817, 5,545,818, and 5,576,198; in PCT Application Nos. WO 95/16783 and WO 97/32977; and in McBride *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91: 7301-7305 (1994), all of which are incorporated herein by reference. Plastid transformation via biolistics was achieved initially in the unicellular green alga *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* (Boynton *et al.* (1988) *Science* 240: 1534-1537, incorporated herein by reference) and this approach, using selection for *cis*-acting antibiotic resistance loci (spectinomycin/streptomycin resistance) or complementation of non-photosynthetic mutant phenotypes, was soon extended to *Nicotiana tabacum* (Svab *et al.* (1990) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87: 8526-8530, incorporated herein by reference).

The basic technique for tobacco chloroplast transformation involves the particle bombardment of leaf tissue or PEG-mediated uptake of plasmid DNA in protoplasts with regions of cloned plastid DNA flanking a selectable antibiotic resistance marker. The 1 to 1.5 kb flanking regions, termed "targeting sequences," facilitate homologous recombination with the plastid genome and thus allow the replacement or modification of specific regions of the 156 kb tobacco plastid genome. Initially, point mutations in the chloroplast 16S rDNA and *rps12* genes conferring resistance to spectinomycin and/or streptomycin were utilized as selectable markers for transformation (Svab, Z., Hajdukiewicz, P., and Maliga, P. (1990) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87, 8526-8530; Staub, J. M., and Maliga, P. (1992) *Plant Cell* 4, 39-45, incorporated herein by reference). This resulted in stable homoplasmic transformants at a frequency of approximately one per 100 bombardments of target leaves. The presence of cloning sites between these markers allowed creation of a plastid targeting vector for introduction of foreign genes (Staub, J.M., and Maliga, P., *EMBO J.* 12: 601-606 (1993), incorporated herein by reference). Substantial increases

in transformation frequency were obtained by replacement of the recessive rRNA or r-protein antibiotic resistance genes with a dominant selectable marker, the bacterial *aadA* gene encoding the spectinomycin-detoxifying enzyme aminoglycoside-3'-adenyltransferase (Svab, Z., and Maliga, P. (1993) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90, 913-917, incorporated herein by reference).

- 5 Previously, this marker had been used successfully for high-frequency transformation of the plastid genome of the green alga *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* (Goldschmidt-Clermont, M. (1991) *Nucl. Acids Res.* 19, 4083-4089, incorporated herein by reference). Recently, plastid transformation of protoplasts from tobacco and the moss *Physcomitrella patens* has been attained using polyethylene glycol (PEG) mediated DNA uptake (O'Neill *et al.* (1993) *Plant J.* 3: 729-738; Koop *et al.* (1996) *Planta* 199: 193-201, both of which are incorporated herein by reference).

## SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

- 15 The present invention provides DNA molecules isolated from wheat, soybean, cotton, sugar beet, oilseed rape, rice, sorghum, and sugar cane encoding enzymes having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity and chimeric genes comprising such DNA. Sequences of such DNA molecules are set forth in SEQ ID NOs: 9 (wheat), 11 (soybean), 15 (cotton), 17 (sugar beet), 19 (oilseed rape), 21 (rice), 23 (sorghum), and 36 (sugar cane).

- 20 The present invention also provides modified forms of plant protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzymes that are resistant to compounds that inhibit unmodified naturally occurring plant protox enzymes, and DNA molecules coding for such inhibitor-resistant plant protox enzymes. Thus, in one aspect the present invention provides a DNA molecule encoding a plant protox enzyme that is capable of being incorporated into a DNA construct used to transform a
- 25 plant containing wild-type, herbicide-sensitive protox, wherein the DNA molecule has at least one point mutation relative to a wild-type DNA molecule encoding plant protox such that upon transformation with the DNA construct the plant contains the DNA molecule, which renders the plant resistant to the application of a herbicide that inhibits naturally occurring plant protox. The present invention includes chimeric genes and modified forms of naturally occurring protox
- 30 genes that can express the inhibitor-resistant plant protox enzymes in plants.

Genes encoding inhibitor-resistant plant protox enzymes can be used to confer resistance to protox-inhibitory herbicides in whole plants and as a selectable marker in plant cell transformation methods. Accordingly, the present invention also includes plants, including the descendants thereof, plant tissues and plant seeds containing plant expressible genes encoding these modified protox enzymes. These plants, plant tissues and plant seeds are resistant to protox-inhibitors at levels that normally are inhibitory to the naturally occurring protox activity in the plant. Plants encompassed by the invention especially include those that would be potential targets for protox inhibiting herbicides, particularly agronomically important crops such as maize and other cereal crops such as barley, wheat, sorghum, rye, oats, turf and forage grasses, millet and rice. Also comprised are other crop plants such as sugar cane, soybean, cotton, sugar beet, oilseed rape and tobacco.

The present invention accordingly provides a method for selecting plant cells transformed with a DNA molecule of the invention that encodes a herbicide-tolerant form of plant protox. The method comprises introducing the DNA molecule into plant cells whose growth is sensitive to inhibition by herbicides to which the protox encoded by the DNA molecule is resistant, thus forming a transformed plant cell. The transformed plant cell whose growth is resistant to the selected herbicide is identified by selection at a herbicide concentration that inhibits the growth of untransformed plant cells.

The present invention is directed further to methods for the production of plants, including plant material, such as for example plant tissues, protoplasts, cells, calli, organs, plant seeds, embryos, pollen, egg cells, zygotes, together with any other propagating material and plant parts, such as for example flowers, stems, fruits, leaves, roots originating in transgenic plants or their progeny previously transformed by means of the process of the invention, which produce an inhibitor-resistant form of the plant protox enzyme provided herein. Such plants may be stably transformed with a structural gene encoding the resistant protox, or prepared by direct selection techniques whereby herbicide resistant lines are isolated, characterized and developed.

In another aspect, the present invention is directed to a method for controlling unwanted vegetation growing at a locus where a herbicide-tolerant, agronomically useful plant, which is transformed with a DNA molecule according to the present invention that encodes a herbicide-

tolerant form of plant protox, has been cultivated. The method comprises applying to the locus to be protected an effective amount of herbicide that inhibits naturally occurring protox activity.

The present invention is further directed to probes and methods for detecting the presence of genes encoding inhibitor-resistant forms of the plant protox enzyme and quantitating levels of inhibitor-resistant protox transcripts in plant tissue. These methods may be used to identify or screen for plants or plant tissue containing and/or expressing a gene encoding an inhibitor-resistant form of the plant protox enzyme.

The present invention also relates to plastid transformation and to the expression of DNA molecules in a plant plastid. In a preferred embodiment, a native plant protox enzyme or a modified plant protox enzyme is expressed in plant plastids to obtain herbicide resistant plants.

In a further embodiment, the present invention is directed to a chimeric gene comprising: (a) a DNA molecule isolated from a plant, which in its native state encodes a polypeptide that comprises a plastid transit peptide, and a mature enzyme that is natively targeted to a plastid of the plant by the plastid transit peptide, wherein the DNA molecule is modified such that it does not encode a functional plastid transit peptide; and (b) a promoter capable of expressing the DNA molecule in a plastid, wherein the promoter is operatively linked to the DNA molecule. The DNA molecule may be modified in that at least a portion of the native plastid transit peptide coding sequence is absent from the DNA molecule. Alternatively, the DNA molecule may be modified in that one or more nucleotides of the native plastid transit peptide coding sequence are mutated, thereby rendering an encoded plastid transit peptide nonfunctional. The present invention also relates to plants homoplasmic for chloroplast genomes containing such chimeric genes. In a preferred embodiment, the DNA molecule encodes an enzyme that is naturally inhibited by a herbicidal compound. In this case, such plants are resistant to a herbicide that naturally inhibits the enzyme encoded by a DNA molecule according to the present invention.

The present invention is also directed to plants made resistant to a herbicide by transforming their plastid genome with a DNA molecule according to the present invention and to methods for obtaining such plants. In a preferred embodiment, the DNA molecule encodes an enzyme that is naturally inhibited by a herbicidal compound. In a more preferred embodiment, the DNA molecule encodes an enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, which is modified so that it that confers resistance to protox inhibitors. A further embodiment of

the present invention is directed to a method for controlling the growth of undesired vegetation, which comprises applying to a population of the above-described plants an effective amount of an inhibitor of the enzyme.

The present invention also provides a novel method for selecting a transplastomic plant cell, comprising the steps of: introducing the above-described chimeric gene into the plastome of a plant cell; expressing the encoded enzyme in the plastids of the plant cell; and selecting a cell that is resistant to a herbicidal compound that naturally inhibits the activity of the enzyme, whereby the resistant cell comprises transformed plastids. In a preferred embodiment, the enzyme is naturally inhibited by a herbicidal compound and the transgenic plant is able to grow on an amount of the herbicidal compound that naturally inhibits the activity of the enzyme. In a further preferred embodiment, the enzyme has protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity and is modified so that it that confers resistance to protox inhibitors.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE SEQUENCES IN THE SEQUENCE LISTING

- SEQ ID NO:1: DNA coding sequence for an *Arabidopsis thaliana* protox-1 protein.  
 SEQ ID NO:2: *Arabidopsis* protox-1 amino acid sequence encoded by SEQ ID NO:1.  
 SEQ ID NO:3: DNA coding sequence for an *Arabidopsis thaliana* protox-2 protein.  
 SEQ ID NO:4: *Arabidopsis* protox-2 amino acid sequence encoded by SEQ ID NO:3.  
 SEQ ID NO:5: DNA coding sequence for a maize protox-1 protein.  
 SEQ ID NO:6: Maize protox-1 amino acid sequence encoded by SEQ ID NO:5.  
 SEQ ID NO:7: DNA coding sequence for a maize protox-2 protein.  
 SEQ ID NO:8: Maize protox-2 amino acid sequence encoded by SEQ ID NO:7.  
 SEQ ID NO:9: Partial DNA coding sequence for a wheat protox-1 protein.  
 SEQ ID NO:10: Partial wheat protox-1 amino acid sequence encoded by SEQ ID NO:9.  
 SEQ ID NO:11: DNA coding sequence for a soybean protox-1 protein.  
 SEQ ID NO:12: Soybean protox-1 protein encoded by SEQ ID NO:11.  
 SEQ ID NO:13: Promoter sequence from *Arabidopsis thaliana* protox-1 gene.  
 SEQ ID NO:14: Promoter sequence from maize protox-1 gene.  
 SEQ ID NO:15: DNA coding sequence for a cotton protox-1 protein.

SEQ ID NO:16: Cotton protox-1 amino acid sequence encoded by SEQ ID NO:15.  
 SEQ ID NO:17: DNA coding sequence for a sugar beet protox-1 protein.  
 SEQ ID NO:18: Sugar beet protox-1 amino acid sequence encoded by SEQ ID NO:17.  
 SEQ ID NO:19: DNA coding sequence for an oilseed rape protox-1 protein.  
 5 SEQ ID NO:20: Oilseed rape protox-1 amino acid sequence encoded by SEQ ID NO:19.  
 SEQ ID NO:21: Partial DNA coding sequence for a rice protox-1 protein.  
 SEQ ID NO:22: Partial rice protox-1 amino acid sequence encoded by SEQ ID NO:21.  
 SEQ ID NO:23: Partial DNA coding sequence for a sorghum protox-1 protein.  
 SEQ ID NO:24: Partial sorghum protox-1 amino acid sequence encoded by SEQ ID NO:23.  
 10 SEQ ID NO:25: Maize protox-1 intron sequence.  
 SEQ ID NO:26: Promoter sequence from sugar beet protox-1 gene.  
 SEQ ID NO:27: Pclp\_P1a - plastid *clpP* gene promoter top strand PCR primer.  
 SEQ ID NO:28: Pclp\_P1b - plastid *clpP* gene promoter bottom strand PCR primer.  
 SEQ ID NO:29: Pclp\_P2b - plastid *clpP* gene promoter bottom strand PCR primer.  
 15 SEQ ID NO:30: Trps16\_P1a - plastid *rps16* gene top strand PCR primer.  
 SEQ ID NO:31: Trps16\_p1b - plastid *rps16* gene bottom strand PCR primer.  
 SEQ ID NO:32: minpsb\_U - plastid *psbA* gene top strand primer.  
 SEQ ID NO:33: minpsb\_L - plastid *psbA* gene bottom strand primer.  
 SEQ ID NO:34: APRTXP1a - top strand PCR primer.  
 20 SEQ ID NO:35: APRTXP1b - bottom strand PCR primer.  
 SEQ ID NO:36: Partial DNA coding sequence for a sugar cane protox-1 protein.  
 SEQ ID NO:37: Partial sugar cane protox-1 amino acid sequence encoded by SEQ ID NO:36.

## DEPOSITS

25 The following vector molecules have been deposited with Agricultural Research Service,  
 Patent Culture Collection (NRRL), Northern Regional Research Center, 1815 North University  
 Street, Peoria, Illinois 61604, U.S.A on the dates indicated below:

30 Wheat protox-1a, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited March 19, 1996, as  
 pWDC-13 (NRRL #B21545).

Soybean protox-1, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited December 15, 1995 as pWDC-12 (NRRL #B-21516).

Cotton protox-1, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited July 1, 1996 as pWDC-15 (NRRL #B-21594).

5 Sugar beet protox-1, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited July 29, 1996, as pWDC-16 (NRRL #B-21595N).

Oilseed rape protox-1, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited August 23, 1996, as pWDC-17 (NRRL #B-21615).

10 Rice protox-1, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited December 6, 1996, as pWDC-18 (NRRL #B-21648).

Sorghum protox-1, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited December 6, 1996, as pWDC-19 (NRRL #B-21649).

15 Resistant mutant pAraC-2Cys, in the pMut-1 plasmid, was deposited on November 14, 1994 under the designation pWDC-7 with the Agricultural Research Culture Collection and given the deposit designation NRRL #21339N.

AraPT1Pro containing the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 promoter was deposited December 15, 1995, as pWDC-11 (NRRL #B-21515)

A plasmid containing the maize protox-1 promoter fused to the remainder of the maize protox-1 coding sequence was deposited March 19, 1996 as pWDC-14 (NRRL #B-21546).

20 A plasmid containing the sugar beet protox-1 promoter was deposited December 6, 1996, as pWDC-20 (NRRL #B-21650).

## DEFINITIONS

25 For clarity, certain terms used in the specification are defined and presented as follows:

Associated With / Operatively Linked: refers to two DNA sequences that are related physically or functionally. For example, a promoter or regulatory DNA sequence is said to be "associated with" a DNA sequence that codes for an RNA or a protein if the two sequences are operatively linked, or situated such that the regulator DNA sequence will affect the expression  
30 level of the coding or structural DNA sequence.

Chimeric Gene: a recombinant DNA sequence in which a promoter or regulatory DNA sequence is operatively linked to, or associated with, a DNA sequence that codes for an mRNA or which is expressed as a protein, such that the regulator DNA sequence is able to regulate transcription or expression of the associated DNA sequence. The regulator DNA sequence of the chimeric gene is not normally operatively linked to the associated DNA sequence as found in nature.

Coding DNA Sequence: a DNA sequence that is translated in an organism to produce a protein.

Corresponding To: in the context of the present invention, "corresponding to" means that when the amino acid sequences of various protox enzymes are aligned with each other, such as in Table 1A, the amino acids that "correspond to" certain enumerated positions in Table 1A are those that align with these positions in Table 1A, but that are not necessarily in these exact numerical positions relative to the particular protox enzyme's amino acid sequence. Likewise, when the amino acid sequence of a particular protox enzyme (for example, the soybean protox enzyme) is aligned with the amino acid sequence of a reference protox enzyme (for example, the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 sequence given in SEQ ID NO:2), the amino acids in the soybean protox sequence that "correspond to" certain enumerated positions of SEQ ID NO:2 are those that align with these positions of SEQ ID NO:2, but are not necessarily in these exact numerical positions of the soybean protox enzyme's amino acid sequence.

DNA Shuffling: DNA shuffling is a method to introduce mutations or rearrangements, preferably randomly, in a DNA molecule or a method to generate exchanges of DNA sequences between two or more DNA molecules, preferably randomly. The DNA molecule resulting from DNA shuffling is a "shuffled DNA molecule," that is a non-naturally occurring DNA molecule derived from at least one template DNA molecule. The shuffled DNA encodes an enzyme modified with respect to the enzyme encoded by the template DNA, and preferably has an altered biological activity with respect to the enzyme encoded by the template DNA.

Herbicide: a chemical substance used to kill or suppress the growth of plants, plant cells, plant seeds, or plant tissues.



Heterologous DNA Sequence: a DNA sequence not naturally associated with a host cell into which it is introduced, including non-naturally occurring multiple copies of a naturally occurring DNA sequence.

Homologous DNA Sequence: a DNA sequence naturally associated with a host cell into which it is introduced.

Homoplasmic: refers to a plant, plant tissue or plant cell, wherein all of the plastids are genetically identical. In different tissues or stages of development, the plastids may take different forms, e.g., chloroplasts, proplastids, etioplasts, amyloplasts, chromoplasts, and so forth.

Inhibitor: a chemical substance that inactivates the enzymatic activity of a protein such as a biosynthetic enzyme, receptor, signal transduction protein, structural gene product, or transport protein that is essential to the growth or survival of the plant. In the context of the instant invention, an inhibitor is a chemical substance that inactivates the enzymatic activity of protox. The term "herbicide" is used herein to define an inhibitor when applied to plants, plant cells, plant seeds, or plant tissues.

Isolated: in the context of the present invention, an isolated nucleic acid molecule or an isolated enzyme is a nucleic acid molecule or enzyme that, by the hand of man, exists apart from its native environment and is therefore not a product of nature. An isolated nucleic acid molecule or enzyme may exist in a purified form or may exist in a non-native environment such as, for example, a transgenic host cell.

Minimal Promoter: promoter elements, particularly a TATA element, that are inactive or that have greatly reduced promoter activity in the absence of upstream activation. In the presence of a suitable transcription factor, the minimal promoter functions to permit transcription.

Modified Enzyme Activity: enzyme activity different from that which naturally occurs in a plant (i.e. enzyme activity that occurs naturally in the absence of direct or indirect manipulation of such activity by man), which is tolerant to inhibitors that inhibit the naturally occurring enzyme activity.

Nucleic Acid Molecule: a linear segment of single- or double-stranded DNA or RNA that can be isolated from any source. In the context of the present invention, the nucleic acid molecule is preferably a segment of DNA.

Plant: refers to any plant or part of a plant at any stage of development. Therein are also included cuttings, cell or tissue cultures and seeds. As used in conjunction with the present invention, the term "plant tissue" includes, but is not limited to, whole plants, plant cells, plant organs, plant seeds, protoplasts, callus, cell cultures, and any groups of plant cells organized into structural and/or functional units.

Plastome: the genome of a plastid.

Protox-1: chloroplast protox.

Protox-2: mitochondrial protox.

Significant Increase: an increase in enzymatic activity that is larger than the margin of error inherent in the measurement technique, preferably an increase by about 2-fold or greater of the activity of the wild-type enzyme in the presence of the inhibitor, more preferably an increase by about 5-fold or greater, and most preferably an increase by about 10-fold or greater.

Substantially Similar: with respect to nucleic acids, a nucleic acid molecule that has at least 60 percent sequence identity with a reference nucleic acid molecule. In a preferred embodiment, a substantially similar DNA sequence is at least 80% identical to a reference DNA sequence; in a more preferred embodiment, a substantially similar DNA sequence is at least 90% identical to a reference DNA sequence; and in a most preferred embodiment, a substantially similar DNA sequence is at least 95% identical to a reference DNA sequence. A substantially similar nucleotide sequence typically hybridizes to a reference nucleic acid molecule, or fragments thereof, under the following conditions: hybridization at 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50°C; wash with 2X SSC, 1% SDS, at 50°C. With respect to proteins or peptides, a substantially similar amino acid sequence is an amino acid sequence that is at least 90% identical to the amino acid sequence of a reference protein or peptide and has substantially the same activity as the reference protein or peptide.

Tolerance / Resistance: the ability to continue normal growth or function when exposed to an inhibitor or herbicide.

Transformation: a process for introducing heterologous DNA into a cell, tissue, or plant. Transformed cells, tissues, or plants are understood to encompass not only the end product of a transformation process, but also transgenic progeny thereof.

Transit Peptide: a signal polypeptide that is translated in conjunction with a protein encoded by a DNA molecule, forming a polypeptide precursor. In the process of transport to a selected site within the cell, a chloroplast for example, the transit peptide can be cleaved from the remainder of the polypeptide precursor to provide an active or mature protein.

5 Transformed: refers to an organism such as a plant into which a heterologous DNA molecule has been introduced. The DNA molecule can be stably integrated into the genome of the plant, wherein the genome of the plant encompasses the nuclear genome, the plastid genome and the mitochondrial genome. In a transformed plant, the DNA molecule can also be present as an extrachromosomal molecule. Such an extrachromosomal molecule can be auto-replicating. A  
10 "non-transformed" plant refers to a wild-type organism, i.e., a plant, which does not contain the heterologous DNA molecule.

Transplastome: a transformed plastid genome.

Nucleotides are indicated by their bases by the following standard abbreviations: adenine (A), cytosine (C), thymine (T), and guanine (G). Amino acids are likewise indicated by the  
15 following standard abbreviations: alanine (ala; A), arginine (Arg; R), asparagine (Asn; N), aspartic acid (Asp; D), cysteine (Cys; C), glutamine (Gln; Q), glutamic acid (Glu; E), glycine (Gly; G), histidine (His; H), isoleucine (Ile; I), leucine (Leu; L), lysine (lys; K), methionine (Met; M), phenylalanine (Phe; F), proline (Pro; P), serine (Ser; S), threonine (Thr; T), tryptophan (Trp; W), tyrosine (Tyr; Y), and valine (Val; V). Furthermore (Xaa; X) represents any amino acid.

## DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

### I. Plant Protox Coding Sequences

In one aspect, the present invention is directed to an isolated DNA molecule that encodes  
25 protoporphyrinogen oxidase (referred to herein as "protox"), the enzyme that catalyzes the oxidation of protoporphyrinogen IX to protoporphyrin IX, from wheat, soybean, cotton, sugar beet, oilseed rape, rice, sorghum, and sugar cane. The partial DNA coding sequence and corresponding amino acid sequence for a wheat protox enzyme are provided as SEQ ID NOs:9 and 10, respectively. The DNA coding sequence and corresponding amino acid sequence for a  
30 soybean protox enzyme are provided as SEQ ID NOs:11 and 12, respectively. The DNA coding

sequence and corresponding amino acid sequence for a cotton protox enzyme are provided as SEQ ID NOs:15 and 16, respectively. The DNA coding sequence and corresponding amino acid sequence for a sugar beet protox enzyme are provided as SEQ ID NOs:17 and 18, respectively. The DNA coding sequence and corresponding amino acid sequence for an oilseed rape protox enzyme are provided as SEQ ID NOs:19 and 20, respectively. The partial DNA coding sequence and corresponding amino acid sequence for a rice protox enzyme are provided as SEQ ID NOs:21 and 22, respectively. The partial DNA coding sequence and corresponding amino acid sequence for a sorghum protox enzyme are provided as SEQ ID NOs:23 and 24, respectively. The partial DNA coding sequence and corresponding amino acid sequence for a sugar cane protox enzyme are provided as SEQ ID NOs:36 and 37, respectively.

The DNA coding sequences and corresponding amino acid sequences for protox enzymes from *Arabidopsis thaliana* and maize are provided herein as SEQ ID NOs:1-4 (*Arabidopsis*) and SEQ ID NOs:5-8 (maize).

The invention therefore is directed to a DNA molecule encoding a protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a eukaryotic protox selected from the group consisting of a wheat protox enzyme, a soybean protox enzyme, a cotton protox enzyme, a sugar beet protox enzyme, an oilseed rape protox enzyme, a rice protox enzyme, a sorghum protox enzyme, and a sugar cane protox enzyme.

Preferred within the scope of the invention are isolated DNA molecules encoding the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from dicotyledonous plants, but especially from soybean plants, cotton plants, sugar beet plants and oilseed rape plants, such as those given in SEQ ID NOS: 11, 15, 17 and 19. More preferred are isolated DNA molecules encoding the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from soybean, such as given in SEQ ID NO:11, and sugar beet, such as given in SEQ ID NO:17.

Also preferred are isolated DNA molecules encoding the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from monocotyledonous plants, but especially from wheat plants, rice plants, sorghum plants, and sugar cane plants, such as those given in SEQ ID NOS: 9, 21, 23, and 36. More preferred are isolated DNA molecules encoding the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from wheat such as given in SEQ ID NO:9.

In another aspect, the present invention is directed to isolated DNA molecules encoding the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme protein from a dicotyledonous plant, wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NOs: 12, 16, 18 and 20. Further comprised are isolated DNA molecules encoding the

5 protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme protein from a monocotyledonous plant, wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NOs: 10, 22, 24, and 37. More preferred is an isolated DNA molecule encoding the

protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence from wheat such as given in SEQ ID NO:10. More preferred is an isolated DNA

10 molecule encoding the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence from soybean, such as given in SEQ ID NO:12 and sugar beet, such as given in SEQ ID NO:18.

Using the information provided by the present invention, the DNA coding sequence for the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from any eukaryotic organism may be obtained

15 using standard methods.

In another aspect, the present invention is directed to an isolated DNA molecule that encodes a wheat protox enzyme and that comprises a nucleotide sequence that hybridizes to the coding sequence shown in SEQ ID NO:9 under the following hybridization and wash conditions:

- 20 (a) hybridization in 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C; and
- (b) wash in 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50° C.

In yet another aspect, the present invention is directed to an isolated DNA molecule that encodes a soybean protox enzyme and that comprises a nucleotide sequence that hybridizes to the coding sequence shown in SEQ ID NO:11 under the following hybridization and wash

25 conditions:

- (a) hybridization in 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C; and
- (b) wash in 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50° C.

In still another aspect, the present invention is directed to an isolated DNA molecule that

30 encodes a cotton protox enzyme and that comprises a nucleotide sequence that hybridizes to the

coding sequence shown in SEQ ID NO:15 under the following hybridization and wash conditions:

- (a) hybridization in 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C; and
- (b) wash in 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50° C.

In another aspect, the present invention is directed to an isolated DNA molecule that encodes a sugar beet protox enzyme and that comprises a nucleotide sequence that hybridizes to the coding sequence shown in SEQ ID NO:17 under the following hybridization and wash conditions:

- (a) hybridization in 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C; and
- (b) wash in 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50° C.

In another aspect, the present invention is directed to an isolated DNA molecule that encodes an oilseed rape protox enzyme and that comprises a nucleotide sequence that hybridizes to the coding sequence shown in SEQ ID NO:19 under the following hybridization and wash conditions:

- (a) hybridization in 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C; and
- (b) wash in 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50° C.

In another aspect, the present invention is directed to an isolated DNA molecule that encodes a rice protox enzyme and that comprises a nucleotide sequence that hybridizes to the coding sequence shown in SEQ ID NO:21 under the following hybridization and wash conditions:

- (a) hybridization in 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C; and
- (b) wash in 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50° C.

In another aspect, the present invention is directed to an isolated DNA molecule that encodes a sorghum protox enzyme and that comprises a nucleotide sequence that hybridizes to the coding sequence shown in SEQ ID NO:23 under the following hybridization and wash conditions:

- (a) hybridization in 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C; and
- (b) wash in 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50° C.

In another aspect, the present invention is directed to an isolated DNA molecule that encodes a sugar cane protox enzyme and that comprises a nucleotide sequence that hybridizes to the coding sequence shown in SEQ ID NO:36 under the following hybridization and wash conditions:

- (a) hybridization in 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C; and
- (b) wash in 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50° C.

The isolated eukaryotic protox sequences taught by the present invention may be manipulated according to standard genetic engineering techniques to suit any desired purpose. For example, the entire protox sequence or portions thereof may be used as probes capable of specifically hybridizing to protox coding sequences and messenger RNA's. To achieve specific hybridization under a variety of conditions, such probes include sequences that are unique among protox coding sequences and are preferably at least 10 nucleotides in length, and most preferably at least 20 nucleotides in length. Such probes may be used to amplify and analyze protox coding sequences from a chosen organism via the well known process of polymerase chain reaction (PCR). This technique may be useful to isolate additional protox coding sequences from a desired organism or as a diagnostic assay to determine the presence of protox coding sequences in an organism.

Factors that affect the stability of hybrids determine the stringency of the hybridization. One such factor is the melting temperature  $T_m$ , which can be easily calculated according to the formula provided in DNA PROBES, George H. Keller and Mark M. Manak, Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 1993, Section one: Molecular Hybridization Technology; page 8 ff.

The preferred hybridization temperature is in the range of about 25°C below the calculated melting temperature  $T_m$  and preferably in the range of about 12-15°C below the calculated melting temperature  $T_m$  and in the case of oligonucleotides in the range of about 5-10°C below the melting temperature  $T_m$ .

Comprised by the present invention are DNA molecules that hybridize to a DNA molecule according to the invention as defined hereinbefore, but preferably to an oligonucleotide probe obtainable from the DNA molecule comprising a contiguous portion of the sequence of the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme at least 10 nucleotides in length, under moderately stringent conditions.

The invention further embodies the use of a nucleotide probe capable of specifically hybridizing to a plant protox gene or mRNA of at least 10 nucleotides length in a polymerase chain reaction (PCR).

In a further embodiment, the present invention provides probes capable of specifically hybridizing to a eukaryotic DNA sequence encoding a protoporphyrinogen oxidase activity or to the respective mRNA and methods for detecting the DNA sequences in eukaryotic organisms using the probes according to the invention.

Protox specific hybridization probes may also be used to map the location of the native eukaryotic protox gene(s) in the genome of a chosen organism using standard techniques based on the selective hybridization of the probe to genomic protox sequences. These techniques include, but are not limited to, identification of DNA polymorphisms identified or contained within the protox probe sequence, and use of such polymorphisms to follow segregation of the protox gene relative to other markers of known map position in a mapping population derived from self fertilization of a hybrid of two polymorphic parental lines (see e.g. Helentjaris *et al.*, *Plant Mol. Biol.* 5: 109 (1985). Sommer *et al. Biotechniques* 12: 82 (1992); D'Ovidio *et al.*, *Plant Mol. Biol.* 15: 169 (1990)). While any eukaryotic protox sequence is contemplated to be useful as a probe for mapping protox genes from any eukaryotic organism, preferred probes are those protox sequences from organisms more closely related to the chosen organism, and most preferred probes are those protox sequences from the chosen organism. Mapping of protox genes in this manner is contemplated to be particularly useful in plants for breeding purposes. For instance, by knowing the genetic map position of a mutant protox gene that confers herbicide resistance, flanking DNA markers can be identified from a reference genetic map (see, e.g., Helentjaris, *Trends Genet.* 3: 217 (1987)). During introgression of the herbicide resistance trait into a new breeding line, these markers can then be used to monitor the extent of protox-linked



flanking chromosomal DNA still present in the recurrent parent after each round of back-crossing.

Protox specific hybridization probes may also be used to quantitate levels of protox mRNA in an organism using standard techniques such as Northern blot analysis. This technique  
 5 may be useful as a diagnostic assay to detect altered levels of protox expression that may be associated with particular adverse conditions such as autosomal dominant disorder in humans characterized by both neuropsychiatric symptoms and skin lesions, which are associated with decreased levels of protox activity (Brenner and Bloomer, *New Engl. J. Med.* 302: 765 (1980)).

A further embodiment of the invention is a method of producing a DNA molecule  
 10 comprising a DNA portion encoding a protein having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme activity comprising:

- (a) preparing a nucleotide probe capable of specifically hybridizing to a plant protox gene or mRNA, wherein the probe comprises a contiguous portion of the coding sequence for a protox protein from a plant of at least 10 nucleotides length;
- 15 (b) probing for other protox coding sequences in populations of cloned genomic DNA fragments or cDNA fragments from a chosen organism using the nucleotide probe prepared according to step (a); and
- (c) isolating and multiplying a DNA molecule comprising a DNA portion encoding a protein having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme activity.

20 A further embodiment of the invention is a method of isolating a DNA molecule from any plant comprising a DNA portion encoding a protein having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme activity.

- (a) preparing a nucleotide probe capable of specifically hybridizing to a plant protox gene or mRNA, wherein the probe comprises a contiguous portion of the coding  
 25 sequence for a protox protein from a plant of at least 10 nucleotides length;
- (b) probing for other protox coding sequences in populations of cloned genomic DNA fragments or cDNA fragments from a chosen organism using the nucleotide probe prepared according to step (a); and
- (c) isolating a DNA molecule comprising a DNA portion encoding a protein having  
 30 protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme activity.

The invention further comprises a method of producing an essentially pure DNA sequence coding for a protein exhibiting protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme activity, which method comprises:

- (a) preparing a genomic or a cDNA library from a suitable source organism using an appropriate cloning vector;
- (b) hybridizing the library with a probe molecule; and
- (c) identifying positive hybridizations of the probe to the DNA clones from the library that is clones potentially containing the nucleotide sequence corresponding to the amino acid sequence for protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox).

The invention further comprises a method of producing an essentially pure DNA sequence coding for a protein exhibiting protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme activity, which method comprises:

- (a) preparing total DNA from a genomic or a cDNA library;
- (b) using the DNA of step (a) as a template for PCR reaction with primers representing low degeneracy portions of the amino acid sequence of protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox).

A further object of the invention is an assay to identify inhibitors of protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme activity that comprises:

- (a) incubating a first sample of protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) and its substrate;
- (b) measuring an uninhibited reactivity of the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) from step (a);
- (c) incubating a first sample of protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) and its substrate in the presence of a second sample comprising an inhibitor compound;
- (d) measuring an inhibited reactivity of the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from step (c); and
- (e) comparing the inhibited reactivity to the uninhibited reactivity of protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme.

A further object of the invention is an assay to identify inhibitor-resistant protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) mutants that comprises:

- (a) incubating a first sample of protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme and its substrate in the presence of a second sample comprising a protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme inhibitor;
- (b) measuring an unmutated reactivity of the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from step (a);
- (c) incubating a first sample of a mutated protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme and its substrate in the presence of a second sample comprising protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme inhibitor;
- (d) measuring a mutated reactivity of the mutated protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from step (c); and
- (e) comparing the mutated reactivity to the unmutated reactivity of the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme.

A further object of the invention is a protox enzyme inhibitor obtained by a method according to the invention.

For recombinant production of the enzyme in a host organism, the protox coding sequence may be inserted into an expression cassette designed for the chosen host and introduced into the host where it is recombinantly produced. The choice of specific regulatory sequences such as promoter, signal sequence, 5' and 3' untranslated sequences, and enhancer, is within the level of skill of the routineer in the art. The resultant molecule, containing the individual elements linked in proper reading frame, may be inserted into a vector capable of being transformed into the host cell. Suitable expression vectors and methods for recombinant production of proteins are well known for host organisms such as *E. coli* (see, *e.g.* Studier and Moffatt, *J. Mol. Biol.* 189: 113 (1986); Brosius, *DNA* 8: 759 (1989)), yeast (see, *e.g.*, Schneider and Guarente, *Meth. Enzymol.* 194: 373 (1991)) and insect cells (see, *e.g.*, Luckow and Summers, *Bio/Technol.* 6: 47 (1988)). Specific examples include plasmids such as pBluescript (Stratagene, La Jolla, CA), pFLAG (International Biotechnologies, Inc., New Haven, CT), pTrcHis (Invitrogen, La Jolla, CA), and baculovirus expression vectors, *e.g.*, those derived from the genome of *Autographica californica* nuclear polyhedrosis virus (AcMNPV). A preferred baculovirus/insect system is pV11392/Sf21 cells (Invitrogen, La Jolla, CA).

Recombinantly produced eukaryotic protox enzyme is useful for a variety of purposes. For example, it may be used to supply protox enzymatic activity *in vitro*. It may also be used in an *in vitro* assay to screen known herbicidal chemicals whose target has not been identified to determine if they inhibit protox. Such an *in vitro* assay may also be used as a more general  
5 screen to identify chemicals that inhibit protox activity and that are therefore herbicide candidates. Recombinantly produced eukaryotic protox enzyme may also be used in an assay to identify inhibitor-resistant protox mutants (*see* International application no. PCT/IB95/00452 filed June 8, 1995, published Dec. 21, 1995 as WO 95/34659, incorporated by reference herein in its entirety). Alternatively, recombinantly produced protox enzyme may be used to further  
10 characterize its association with known inhibitors in order to rationally design new inhibitory herbicides as well as herbicide tolerant forms of the enzyme.

## II. Inhibitor Resistant Plant Protox Enzymes

In another aspect, the present invention teaches modifications that can be made to the  
15 amino acid sequence of any eukaryotic protoporphyrinogen oxidase (referred to herein as "protox") enzyme to yield an inhibitor-resistant form of this enzyme. Preferably, the eukaryotic protox enzyme is a plant protox enzyme. The present invention is directed to inhibitor-resistant protox enzymes having the modifications taught herein, to DNA molecules encoding these modified enzymes, and to chimeric genes capable of expressing these modified enzymes in  
20 plants.

The present invention is thus directed to an isolated DNA molecule encoding a modified eukaryotic protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) having at least one amino acid modification, wherein the amino acid modification has the property of conferring resistance to a protox inhibitor, that is wherein the modified protox is tolerant to an inhibitor in amounts that inhibit the  
25 naturally occurring eukaryotic protox. As used herein "inhibit" refers to a reduction in enzymatic activity observed in the presence of a subject compound compared to the level of activity observed in the absence of the subject compound, wherein the percent level of reduction is preferably at least 10%, more preferably at least 50%, and most preferably at least 90%.

Preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified eukaryotic protoporphyrinogen  
30 oxidase (protox) that is a plant protox, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in

amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Even more preferred is a protox selected from the group consisting of an *Arabidopsis* protox enzyme, a maize protox enzyme, a wheat protox enzyme, a soybean protox enzyme, a cotton protox enzyme, a sugar beet protox enzyme, an oilseed rape protox enzyme, a rice protox enzyme, a sorghum protox enzyme, and a sugar cane protox enzyme having at least one amino acid modification, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity.

As used herein, the expression "substantially conserved amino acid sequences" refers to regions of amino acid homology between polypeptides comprising protox enzymes from different sources. In the present invention, seventeen substantially conserved amino acid sub-sequences, designated 1-17 respectively, are shown in Table 1B. One skilled in the art could align the amino acid sequences of protox enzymes from different sources, as has been done in Table 1A, to identify the sub-sequences therein that make up the substantially conserved amino acid sequences defined herein. Stated another way, a given sub-sequence from one source "corresponds to" a homologous subsequence from a different source. The skilled person could then determine whether the identified sub-sequences have the characteristics disclosed and claimed in the present application.

Therefore, a preferred embodiment of the present invention is directed to a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes an enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the nucleic acid molecule is capable of being incorporated into a nucleic acid construct used to transform a plant containing wild-type, herbicide-sensitive protox, wherein the nucleotide sequence has at least one point mutation relative to a wild-type nucleotide sequence encoding plant protox, such that upon transformation with the nucleic acid construct the plant is rendered herbicide-tolerant.

More particularly, a preferred embodiment of the present invention is directed to a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises at least one of the following amino acid sub-sequences:

- (a)  $AP\Delta_1F$ , wherein  $\Delta_1$  is an amino acid other than arginine;
- (b)  $F\Delta_2S$ , wherein  $\Delta_2$  is an amino acid other than cysteine;

- (c)  $Y\Delta_3G$ , wherein  $\Delta_3$  is an amino acid other than alanine;
- (d)  $A\Delta_4D$ , wherein  $\Delta_4$  is an amino acid other than glycine;
- (e)  $Y\Delta_5P$ , wherein  $\Delta_5$  is an amino acid other than proline;
- (f)  $P\Delta_6A$ , wherein  $\Delta_6$  is an amino acid other than valine;
- (g)  $\Delta_7IG$ , wherein  $\Delta_7$  is an amino acid other than tyrosine;
- (h)  $YIGG\Delta_8$ , wherein  $\Delta_8$  is an amino acid other than alanine or serine;
- (i)  $A\Delta_9P$ , wherein  $\Delta_9$  is an amino acid other than isoleucine; and
- (j)  $G\Delta_{10}A$ , wherein  $\Delta_{10}$  is an amino acid other than valine

(Table 1B; sub-sequences 1-10).

Preferred is a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises the amino acid sub-sequence  $AP\Delta_1F$ , wherein  $\Delta_1$  is an amino acid other than arginine. Most preferably,  $\Delta_1$  is cysteine.

Preferred is a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises the amino acid sub-sequence  $F\Delta_2S$ , wherein  $\Delta_2$  is an amino acid other than cysteine. Most preferably,  $\Delta_2$  is phenylalanine, leucine, or lysine.

Preferred is a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises the amino acid sub-sequence  $Y\Delta_3G$ , wherein  $\Delta_3$  is an amino acid other than alanine. Most preferably,  $\Delta_3$  is valine, threonine, leucine, cysteine, or isoleucine.

Preferred is a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises the amino acid sub-sequence  $A\Delta_4D$ , wherein  $\Delta_4$  is an amino acid other than glycine. Most preferably,  $\Delta_4$  is serine or leucine.

Preferred is a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises the amino acid sub-sequence  $\Delta_5$  is an amino acid other than proline. Most preferably,  $\Delta_5$  is serine or histidine.

Preferred is a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises the amino acid sub-sequence  $P\Delta_6A$ , wherein  $\Delta_6$  is an amino acid other than valine. Most preferably,  $\Delta_6$  is leucine.

Preferred is a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises the amino acid sub-sequence  $\Delta_7IG$ , wherein  $\Delta_7$  is an amino acid other than tyrosine. Most preferably,  $\Delta_7$  is cysteine, isoleucine, leucine, threonine, methionine, valine, alanine, or arginine.

Preferred is a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises the amino acid sub-sequence  $F\Delta_8S$ , wherein  $\Delta_8$  is an amino acid other than alanine or serine. Most preferably,  $\Delta_8$  is proline.

Preferred is a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises the amino acid sub-sequence  $A\Delta_9P$ , wherein  $\Delta_9$  is an amino acid other than isoleucine. Most preferably,  $\Delta_9$  is threonine, histidine, glycine, or asparagine.

Preferred is a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme,

wherein the modified enzyme comprises the amino acid sub-sequence  $G\Delta_{10}A$ , wherein  $\Delta_{10}$  is an amino acid other than valine. Most preferably,  $\Delta_{10}$  is alanine.

Another preferred embodiment of the present invention is directed to a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises at least one of the following amino acid sub-sequences:

- (a)  $AP\Delta_1F$ , wherein  $\Delta_1$  is an amino acid other than arginine;
- (b)  $F\Delta_2S$ , wherein  $\Delta_2$  is an amino acid other than cysteine;
- (c)  $Y\Delta_3G$ , wherein  $\Delta_3$  is an amino acid other than alanine;
- (d)  $A\Delta_4D$ , wherein  $\Delta_4$  is an amino acid other than glycine;
- (e)  $Y\Delta_5P$ , wherein  $\Delta_5$  is an amino acid other than proline;
- (f)  $P\Delta_6A$ , wherein  $\Delta_6$  is an amino acid other than valine;
- (g)  $\Delta_7IG$ , wherein  $\Delta_7$  is an amino acid other than tyrosine;
- (h)  $YIGG\Delta_8$ , wherein  $\Delta_8$  is an amino acid other than alanine or serine;
- (i)  $A\Delta_9P$ , wherein  $\Delta_9$  is an amino acid other than isoleucine; and
- (j)  $G\Delta_{10}A$ , wherein  $\Delta_{10}$  is an amino acid other than valine

(Table 1B; sub-sequences 1-10), and wherein the modified enzyme further comprises at least one additional amino acid sub-sequence selected from the group consisting of:

- (k)  $Q\Delta_{11}S$ , wherein  $\Delta_{11}$  is an amino acid other than proline;
- (l)  $IGG\Delta_{12}$ , wherein  $\Delta_{12}$  is an amino acid other than threonine;
- (m)  $SWXL\Delta_{13}$ , wherein  $\Delta_{13}$  is an amino acid other than serine;
- (n)  $L\Delta_{14}Y$ , wherein  $\Delta_{14}$  is an amino acid other than asparagine; and
- (o)  $G\Delta_{15}XGL$ , wherein  $\Delta_{15}$  is an amino acid other than tyrosine.

Preferred is a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises the amino acid sub-sequence  $Y\Delta_3G$ , wherein  $\Delta_3$  is an amino acid other than alanine, or the amino acid sub-sequence  $\Delta_7IG$ , wherein  $\Delta_7$  is an amino acid



other than tyrosine, and wherein the modified enzyme further comprises at least one additional amino acid sub-sequence selected from the group consisting of:

- (k)  $Q\Delta_{11}S$ , wherein  $\Delta_{11}$  is an amino acid other than proline;
- (l)  $IGG\Delta_{12}$ , wherein  $\Delta_{12}$  is an amino acid other than threonine;
- 5 (m)  $SWXL\Delta_{13}$ , wherein  $\Delta_{13}$  is an amino acid other than serine;
- (n)  $L\Delta_{14}Y$ , wherein  $\Delta_{14}$  is an amino acid other than asparagine; and
- (o)  $G\Delta_{15}XGL$ , wherein  $\Delta_{15}$  is an amino acid other than tyrosine.

Preferably,  $\Delta_{11}$  is leucine,  $\Delta_{12}$  is isoleucine or alanine,  $\Delta_{13}$  is leucine,  $\Delta_{14}$  is serine, and  $\Delta_{15}$  is cysteine.

10 Another preferred embodiment of the present invention is directed to a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the modified enzyme comprises: the amino acid sub-sequence  $\Delta_7IG$ , wherein  $\Delta_7$  is an amino acid other than tyrosine; the amino acid  
15 sub-sequences  $IGG\Delta_{12}$ , wherein  $\Delta_{12}$  is an amino acid other than threonine; and the amino acid sub-sequence  $SWXL\Delta_{13}$ , wherein  $\Delta_{13}$  is an amino acid other than serine. Most preferably,  $\Delta_7$  is isoleucine,  $\Delta_{12}$  is isoleucine, and  $\Delta_{13}$  is leucine.

Yet another preferred embodiment of the present invention is directed to a nucleic acid molecule comprising a nucleotide sequence isolated from a plant that encodes a modified enzyme  
20 having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity, wherein the modified enzyme is resistant to an inhibitor of a naturally occurring protox enzyme, wherein the nucleotide sequence is further characterized in that at least one of the following conditions is met:

- (a) the nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $AP\Delta_1F$ , wherein  $\Delta_1$  is an amino acid other than arginine;
- 25 (b) the nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $F\Delta_2S$ , wherein  $\Delta_2$  is an amino acid other than cysteine;
- (c) the nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $Y\Delta_3G$ , wherein  $\Delta_3$  is an amino acid other than alanine;
- (d) the nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  
30  $A\Delta_4D$ , wherein  $\Delta_4$  is an amino acid other than glycine;

- (e) the nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $Y\Delta_5P$ , wherein  $\Delta_5$  is an amino acid other than proline;
- (f) the nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $P\Delta_6A$ , wherein  $\Delta_6$  is an amino acid other than valine;
- 5 (g) the nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $\Delta_7IG$ , wherein  $\Delta_7$  is an amino acid other than tyrosine;
- (h) the nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $YIGG\Delta_8$ , wherein  $\Delta_8$  is an amino acid other than alanine or serine;
- (i) the nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $A\Delta_9P$ , wherein  $\Delta_9$  is an amino acid other than isoleucine;
- 10 (j) the nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $G\Delta_{10}A$ , wherein  $\Delta_{10}$  is an amino acid other than valine;
- (k) the nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $Y\Delta_3G$ , wherein  $\Delta_3$  is an amino acid other than alanine, and the nucleic acid
- 15 sequence also has a sequence that encodes one of the group consisting of:
- (1) sub-sequence  $Q\Delta_{11}S$ , wherein  $\Delta_{11}$  is an amino acid other than proline,
  - (2) sub-sequence  $IGG\Delta_{12}$ , wherein  $\Delta_{12}$  is an amino acid other than threonine,
  - (3) sub-sequence  $SWXL\Delta_{13}$ , wherein  $\Delta_{13}$  is an amino acid other than serine,
  - (4) sub-sequence  $L\Delta_{14}Y$ , wherein  $\Delta_{14}$  is an amino acid other than asparagine,
- 20 and
- (5) sub-sequence  $G\Delta_{15}XGL$ , wherein  $\Delta_{15}$  is an amino acid other than tyrosine;
- (l) the nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $\Delta_7IG$ , wherein  $\Delta_7$  is an amino acid other than tyrosine, and the nucleic acid
- 25 sequence also has a sequence that encodes one of the group consisting of:
- (1) sub-sequence  $Q\Delta_{11}S$ , wherein  $\Delta_{11}$  is an amino acid other than proline,
  - (2) sub-sequence  $IGG\Delta_{12}$ , wherein  $\Delta_{12}$  is an amino acid other than threonine,
  - (3) sub-sequence  $SWXL\Delta_{13}$ , wherein  $\Delta_{13}$  is an amino acid other than serine,
  - (4) sub-sequence  $L\Delta_{14}Y$ , wherein  $\Delta_{14}$  is an amino acid other than asparagine,
- and

(5) sub-sequence  $GA_{15}XGL$ , wherein  $\Delta_{15}$  is an amino acid other than tyrosine;  
and

- (m) the nucleic has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $TA_{16}G$ , wherein  $\Delta_{16}$  is an amino acid other than leucine, and the nucleic acid sequence also has a  
5 sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $YV\Delta_{17}G$ , wherein  $\Delta_{16}$  is an amino acid other than alanine.

Preferably, said nucleic acid sequence has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $TA_{16}G$ , wherein  $\Delta_{16}$  is an amino acid other than leucine, and said nucleic acid sequence also has a sequence that encodes amino acid sub-sequence  $YV\Delta_{17}G$ , wherein  $\Delta_{16}$  is an amino acid  
10 other than alanine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the arginine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 88 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity.

- 15 Particularly preferred is the DNA molecule wherein the arginine is replaced with a cysteine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the cysteine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 159 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity.

- 20 Particularly preferred is the DNA molecule wherein the cysteine is replaced with a phenylalanine or lysine, most preferred, wherein the cysteine is replaced with a phenylalanine.

Also preferred is a DNA encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the isoleucine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 419 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified  
25 protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule, wherein the isoleucine is replaced with a threonine, histidine, glycine or asparagine most preferred, wherein the isoleucine is replaced with a threonine.

- 30 Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the alanine occurring at the position corresponding to

amino acid 164 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the alanine is replaced with a threonine, leucine or valine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the glycine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 165 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the glycine is replaced with a serine or leucine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the tyrosine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 370 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the tyrosine is replaced with a isoleucine or methionine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the valine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 356 of SEQ ID NO:10 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the valine is replaced with a leucine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the serine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 421 of SEQ ID NO:10 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the serine is replaced with a proline.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the valine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 502 of SEQ ID NO:10 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the valine is replaced with a alanine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the alanine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 211 of SEQ ID NO:10 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity.

5 Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the alanine is replaced with a valine or threonine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the glycine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 212 of SEQ ID NO:10 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified  
10 protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the glycine is replaced with a serine.

Also preferred is a DNA encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the isoleucine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 466 of SEQ ID NO:10 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified  
15 protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the isoleucine is replaced with a threonine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the proline occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 369 of SEQ ID NO:12 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified  
20 protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the proline is replaced with a serine or histidine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the alanine occurring at the position corresponding to  
25 amino acid 226 of SEQ ID NO:12 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule, wherein the alanine is replaced with a threonine or leucine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase  
30 (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the valine occurring at the position corresponding to

amino acid 517 of SEQ ID NO:12 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the valine is replaced with a alanine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the tyrosine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 432 of SEQ ID NO:12 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the tyrosine is replaced with a leucine or isoleucine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the proline occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 365 of SEQ ID NO:16 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the proline is replaced with a serine.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the tyrosine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 428 of SEQ ID NO:16 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the tyrosine is replaced with a cysteine or arginine.

Also preferred is a DNA encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the tyrosine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 449 of SEQ ID NO:18 is replaced with another amino acid, wherein the modified protox is tolerant to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the tyrosine is replaced with a cysteine, leucine, isoleucine, valine or methionine.

The present invention is further directed to a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox having a first amino acid substitution and a second amino acid substitution; the first amino acid substitution having the property of conferring resistance to a protox inhibitor; and the second amino acid substitution

having the property of enhancing the resistance conferred by the first amino acid substitution. Preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox, wherein the plant is selected from the group consisting of maize, wheat, soybean, cotton, sugar beet, oilseed rape, rice, sorghum, sugar cane, and *Arabidopsis*.

- 5 More preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox, wherein the plant is selected from the group consisting of maize, wheat, soybean, sugar beet, and *Arabidopsis*.

Preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the second amino acid substitution occurs at a position selected from the group consisting of:

- 10 (a) the position corresponding to the serine at amino acid 305 of SEQ ID NO:2;  
 (b) the position corresponding to the threonine at amino acid 249 of SEQ ID NO:2;  
 (c) the position corresponding to the proline at amino acid 118 of SEQ ID NO:2;  
 (d) the position corresponding to the asparagine at amino acid 425 of SEQ ID NO:2;  
 and  
 15 (e) the position corresponding to the tyrosine at amino acid 498 of SEQ ID NO:2.

Also preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the first amino acid substitution occurs at a position selected from the group consisting of:

- 20 (a) the position corresponding to the arginine at amino acid 88 of SEQ ID NO:6;  
 (b) the position corresponding to the alanine at amino acid 164 of SEQ ID NO:6;  
 (c) the position corresponding to the glycine at amino acid 165 of SEQ ID NO:6;  
 (d) the position corresponding to the tyrosine at amino acid 370 of SEQ ID NO:6;  
 (e) the position corresponding to the cysteine at amino acid 159 of SEQ ID NO:6;  
 (f) the position corresponding to the isoleucine at amino acid 419 of SEQ ID NO:6.  
 (g) the position corresponding to the valine at amino acid 356 of SEQ ID NO:10;  
 25 (h) the position corresponding to the serine at amino acid 421 of SEQ ID NO:10;  
 (i) the position corresponding to the valine at amino acid 502 of SEQ ID NO:10;  
 (j) the position corresponding to the alanine at amino acid 211 of SEQ ID NO:10;  
 (k) the position corresponding to the glycine at amino acid 212 of SEQ ID NO:10;  
 (l) the position corresponding to the isoleucine at amino acid 466 of SEQ ID NO:10;  
 30 (m) the position corresponding to the proline at amino acid 369 of SEQ ID NO:12;

- (n) the position corresponding to the alanine at amino acid 226 of SEQ ID NO:12;
- (o) the position corresponding to the tyrosine at amino acid 432 of SEQ ID NO:12;
- (p) the position corresponding to the valine at amino acid 517 of SEQ ID NO:12;
- (q) the position corresponding to the tyrosine at amino acid 428 of SEQ ID NO:16;
- 5 (r) the position corresponding to the proline at amino acid 365 of SEQ ID NO:16;
- and
- (s) the position corresponding to the tyrosine at amino acid 449 of SEQ ID NO:18.

Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox wherein the plant protox comprises an amino acid  
 10 sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NOs: 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 16, 18, 20, 22, and 37. Most preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox, wherein the plant protox comprises an amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NOs: 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, and 18.

More preferred is a DNA molecule, wherein the first amino acid substitution occurs at a  
 15 position selected from the group consisting of:

- (a) the position corresponding to the arginine at amino acid 88 of SEQ ID NO:6;
- (b) the position corresponding to the alanine at amino acid 164 of SEQ ID NO:6;
- (c) the position corresponding to the glycine at amino acid 165 of SEQ ID NO:6;
- (d) the position corresponding to the tyrosine at amino acid 370 of SEQ ID NO:6;
- 20 (e) the position corresponding to the cysteine at amino acid 159 of SEQ ID NO:6; and
- (f) the position corresponding to the isoleucine at amino acid 419 of SEQ ID NO:6.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the second amino acid substitution occurs at the position corresponding to the serine at amino acid 305 of SEQ ID NO:2 and the first amino acid substitution occurs at a position selected from the group consisting of:

- 25 (a) the position corresponding to the alanine at amino acid 164 of SEQ ID NO:6; and
- (b) the position corresponding to the tyrosine at amino acid 370 of SEQ ID NO:6.

Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the serine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 305 of SEQ ID NO:2 is replaced with leucine.



More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the second amino acid substitution occurs at the position corresponding to the threonine at amino acid 249 of SEQ ID NO:2 and the first amino acid substitution occurs at a position selected from the group consisting of:

- (a) the position corresponding to the alanine at amino acid 164 of SEQ ID NO:6; and
- (b) the position corresponding to the tyrosine at amino acid 370 of SEQ ID NO:6.

Particularly preferred is a DNA wherein the threonine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 249 of SEQ ID NO:2 is replaced with an amino acid selected from the group consisting of isoleucine and alanine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the second amino acid substitution occurs at the position corresponding to the proline at amino acid 118 of SEQ ID NO:2 and the first amino acid substitution occurs at a position selected from the group consisting of:

- (a) the position corresponding to the alanine at amino acid 164 of SEQ ID NO:6; and
- (b) the position corresponding to the tyrosine at amino acid 370 of SEQ ID NO:6.

Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the proline occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 118 of SEQ ID NO:2 is replaced with a leucine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the second amino acid substitution occurs at the position corresponding to the asparagine at amino acid 425 of SEQ ID NO:2 and the first amino acid substitution occurs at a position selected from the group consisting of:

- (a) the position corresponding to the alanine at amino acid 164 of SEQ ID NO:6; and
- (b) the position corresponding to the tyrosine at amino acid 370 of SEQ ID NO:6.

Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the asparagine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 425 of SEQ ID NO:2 is replaced with a serine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the second amino acid substitution occurs the position corresponding to the tyrosine at amino acid 498 of SEQ ID NO:2 and the first amino acid substitution occurs at a position selected from the group consisting of:

- (a) the position corresponding to the alanine at amino acid 164 of SEQ ID NO:6; and
- (b) the position corresponding to the tyrosine at amino acid 370 of SEQ ID NO:6.

Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the tyrosine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 498 of SEQ ID NO:2 is replaced with a cysteine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the tyrosine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 370 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with an amino acid selected from the group consisting of cysteine, isoleucine, leucine, threonine, valine and methionine.

Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the tyrosine occurring at the position  
5 corresponding to amino acid 370 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with an amino acid selected from the group consisting of cysteine, isoleucine, leucine, threonine and methionine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the alanine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 164 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with an amino acid selected from the group consisting of valine, threonine, leucine, cysteine and tyrosine.

10 More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the glycine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 165 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with an amino acid selected from the group consisting of serine and leucine.

Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the glycine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 165 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with a serine.

15 Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the arginine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 88 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with a cysteine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the cysteine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 159 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with an amino acid selected from the group consisting of phenylalanine and lysine.

20 Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the cysteine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 159 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with a phenylalanine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the isoleucine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 419 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with an amino acid selected from the group consisting of threonine, histidine, glycine and asparagine.

25 Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the isoleucine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 419 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with a threonine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the valine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 356 of SEQ ID NO:10 is replaced with a leucine.

30 More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the serine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 421 of SEQ ID NO:10 is replaced with a proline.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the valine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 502 of SEQ ID NO:10 is replaced with a alanine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the isoleucine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 466 of SEQ ID NO:10 is replaced with a threonine.

5 More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the glycine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 212 of SEQ ID NO:10 is replaced with a serine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the alanine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 211 of SEQ ID NO:10 is replaced with a valine or threonine.

10 More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the proline occurring at the position corresponding to residue 369 of SEQ ID NO:12 is replaced with a serine or a histidine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the alanine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 226 of SEQ ID NO:12 is replaced with a leucine or threonine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the tyrosine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 432 of SEQ ID NO:12 is replaced with a leucine or isoleucine.

15 More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the valine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 517 of SEQ ID NO:12 is replaced with a alanine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the tyrosine occurring at the position corresponding to residue 428 of SEQ ID NO:16 is replaced with cysteine or arginine.

20 More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the proline occurring at the position corresponding to residue 365 of SEQ ID NO:16 is replaced with serine.

More preferred is a DNA molecule wherein the proline occurring at the position corresponding to residue 449 of SEQ ID NO:18 is replaced with an amino acid selected from the group consisting of leucine, isoleucine, valine and methionine.

25 The present invention is still further directed to a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox having a double amino acid substitution, wherein both amino acid substitutions are required for there to be resistance to a protox inhibitor. Preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox, wherein the plant is selected from the group consisting of maize, wheat, soybean, cotton, sugar beet, oilseed rape, rice, sorghum, sugar cane, and

*Arabidopsis*. More preferred is a DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox, wherein the plant is maize.

Preferred is a DNA molecule having a double amino acid substitution, wherein one amino acid substitution occurs at the position corresponding to the leucine at amino acid 347 of SEQ ID NO:6, and wherein the second amino acid substitution occurs at the position corresponding to the alanine at amino acid 453 of SEQ ID NO:6.

Particularly preferred is a DNA molecule having a double amino acid substitution, wherein a leucine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 347 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with a serine, and wherein an alanine occurring at the position corresponding to amino acid 453 of SEQ ID NO:6 is replaced with a threonine.

Inhibitor resistant protox enzymes are also obtained using methods involving *in vitro* recombination, also called DNA shuffling. By DNA shuffling, mutations, preferably random mutations, are introduced in protox genes. DNA shuffling also leads to the recombination and rearrangement of sequences within a given protox gene or to the recombination and exchange of sequences between/among two or more different protox genes. These methods allow for the production of millions of mutated protox genes. The mutated genes, or "shuffled" genes, are screened for desirable properties, e.g. improved tolerance to herbicides, and for mutations that provide broad spectrum tolerance to the different classes of inhibitor chemistry. Such screens are described herein.

In a preferred embodiment, a mutagenized protox gene is formed from at least one template protox gene, wherein the template protox gene has been cleaved into double-stranded-random fragments of a desired size. The method of forming the mutagenized protox gene comprising the following steps: adding to the resultant population of double-stranded random fragments one or more single or double-stranded oligonucleotides, wherein said oligonucleotides comprise an area of identity and an area of heterology to the double-stranded template polynucleotide; denaturing the resultant mixture of double-stranded random fragments and oligonucleotides into single-stranded fragments; incubating the resultant population of single-stranded fragments with a polymerase under conditions that result in the annealing of said single-stranded fragments at said areas of identity to form pairs of annealed fragments, said areas of identity being sufficient for one member of a pair to prime replication of the other, thereby

forming a mutagenized double-stranded polynucleotide; and repeating the second and third steps for at least two further cycles, wherein the resultant mixture in the second step of a further cycle includes the mutagenized double-stranded polynucleotide from the third step of the previous cycle, and the further cycle forms a further mutagenized double-stranded polynucleotide, wherein the mutagenized DNA molecule is a protox gene having enhanced tolerance to a herbicide that inhibits naturally occurring protox activity. In a preferred embodiment, the concentration of a single species of double-stranded random fragment in the population of double-stranded random fragments is less than 1% by weight of the total DNA. In a further preferred embodiment, the template double-stranded polynucleotide comprises at least about 100 species of polynucleotides. In another preferred embodiment, the size of the double-stranded random fragments is from about 5-bp to 5-kb. In a further preferred embodiment, the fourth step of the method comprises repeating the second and the third steps for at least 10 cycles. Such method is described, for example, in Stemmer *et al.*, *Nature* 370: 389-391 (1994), in U.S. Patent No. 5,605,793, and in Cramer *et al.*, *Nature* 391: 288-291 (1998), as well as in WO 97/20078. The aforementioned references are all incorporated herein by reference.

In another preferred embodiment, any combination of two or more different protox genes are mutagenized *in vitro* by a staggered extension process (StEP), as described, for example, in Zhao *et al.*, *Nature Biotechnology* 16: 258-261 (1998). The two or more protox genes are used as template for PCR amplification with the extension cycles of the PCR reaction preferably carried out at a lower temperature than the optimal polymerization temperature of the polymerase. For example, when a thermostable polymerase with an optimal temperature of approximately 72°C is used, the temperature for the extension reaction is desirably below 72°C, more desirably below 65°C, preferably below 60°C, and more preferably the temperature for the extension reaction is 55°C. Additionally, the duration of the extension reaction of the PCR cycles is desirably shorter than usually carried out in the art, more desirably it is less than 30 seconds, preferably it is less than 15 seconds, and more preferably the duration of the extension reaction is 5 seconds. Only a short DNA fragment is polymerized in each extension reaction, allowing template switch of the extension products between the starting DNA molecules after each cycle of denaturation and annealing, thereby generating diversity among the extension products. The optimal number of cycles in the PCR reaction depends on the length of the protox

coding regions to be mutagenized, but desirably over 40 cycles, more desirably over 60 cycles, and preferably over 80 cycles are used. Optimal extension conditions and the optimal number of PCR cycles for every combination of protox genes are determined as described in using procedures well-known in the art. The other parameters for the PCR reaction are essentially the same as commonly used in the art. The primers for the amplification reaction are preferably designed to anneal to DNA sequences located outside of the coding sequence of the protox genes, for example to DNA sequences of a vector comprising the protox genes, whereby the different protox genes used in the PCR reaction are preferably comprised in separate vectors. The primers desirably anneal to sequences located less than 500-bp away from the protox coding sequences, preferably less than 200-bp away from the protox coding sequences, and more preferably less than 120-bp away from the protox coding sequences. Preferably, the protox coding sequences are surrounded by restriction sites, which are included in the DNA sequence amplified during the PCR reaction, thereby facilitating the cloning of the amplified products into a suitable vector.

In another preferred embodiment, fragments of protox genes having cohesive ends are produced as described in WO 98/05765. The cohesive ends are produced by ligating a first oligonucleotide corresponding to a part of a protox gene to a second oligonucleotide not present in the gene or corresponding to a part of the gene not adjoining to the part of the gene corresponding to the first oligonucleotide, wherein the second oligonucleotide contains at least one ribonucleotide. A double-stranded DNA is produced using the first oligonucleotide as template and the second oligonucleotide as primer. The ribonucleotide is cleaved and removed. The nucleotide(s) located 5' to the ribonucleotide are also removed, resulting in double-stranded fragments having cohesive ends. Such fragments are randomly reassembled by ligation to obtain novel combinations of gene sequences.

Any protox gene or any combination of protox genes may be used for *in vitro* recombination in the context of the present invention. For example, a protox gene used is derived from a plant, such as a protox gene derived from *Arabidopsis thaliana*, oilseed rape, soybean, sugarbeet, cotton, maize, wheat, rice, sugarcane and sorghum, whose sequences are disclosed herein. Any mutated protox gene is also used, in particular the mutated protox genes described herein. Since plant protox genes exhibit between 70 and 95% identity at the nucleotide

level, with the highest level of identity existing between monocot protox genes, they are readily used in the methods of *in vitro* recombination described above. Protox genes have also been identified from both mammals (i.e. humans and mice) and bacteria (i.e. *Bacillus* and *Myxococcus*), and these genes are also appropriate for *in vitro* recombination, although they exhibit only approximately 40% nucleotide identity. In this case, and when such different genes are used, the conditions in the methods described above are adapted, in particular, the annealing of sequences with low homology is favored, e.g., by addition of polyethylene glycol, preferably from 0% to 20%, or by addition of salt, preferably KCl or NaCl, preferably from 10 mM to 100 mM, or by addition of  $Mg^{2+}$  ions, preferably from 1 mM to 10 mM, or by lowering the annealing temperature, desirably below 60°C, preferably below 50°C. Additionally, whole protox genes or portions thereof, e.g. specific regions of protox genes, are used in the context of the present invention.

The library of mutated protox genes obtained by the methods described above are cloned into appropriate expression vectors and the resulting vectors are transformed into an appropriate host, for example an algae like *Chlamydomonas*, a yeast or a bacteria. An appropriate host is preferably a host that otherwise lacks protox gene activity, for example *E. coli* strain SASX38 (Sasarman *et al.* (1979), *J. Gen. Microbiol.* 113: 297). Host cells transformed with the vectors comprising the library of mutated protox genes are cultured on medium that contains inhibitory concentrations of the inhibitor, and those colonies that grow in the presence of the inhibitor are selected. Colonies that grow in the presence of normally inhibitory concentrations of inhibitor are picked and purified by repeated restreaking. Their plasmids are purified and the DNA sequences of cDNA inserts from plasmids that pass this test are then determined. Any protox inhibitor is used, in particular a protox inhibitor described herein.

The present invention is directed to expression cassettes and recombinant vectors comprising the expression cassettes comprising essentially a promoter, but especially a promoter that is active in a plant, operatively linked to a DNA molecule encoding the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from a eukaryotic organism according to the invention. The expression cassette according to the invention may in addition further comprise a signal sequence operatively linked to the DNA molecule, wherein the signal sequence is capable of targeting the protein encoded by the DNA molecule into the chloroplast or the mitochondria.

The invention relates to a chimeric gene, which comprises an expression cassette comprising essentially a promoter, but especially a promoter that is active in a plant, operatively linked to a heterologous DNA molecule encoding a protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from a eukaryotic organism according to the invention. Preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes an protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from a plant selected from the group consisting of *Arabidopsis*, sugar cane, soybean, barley, cotton, tobacco, sugar beet, oilseed rape, maize, wheat, sorghum, rye, oats, turf and forage grasses, millet, forage and rice. More preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes an protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from a plant selected from the group consisting of soybean, cotton, tobacco, sugar beet, oilseed rape, maize, wheat, sorghum, rye, oats, turf grass, and rice. Particularly preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes an protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from a plant selected from the group consisting of wheat, soybean, cotton, sugar beet, oilseed rape, rice and sorghum. Most preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes an protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from a plant selected from the group consisting of soybean, sugar beet, and wheat.

More preferred is a chimeric gene comprising a promoter active in a plant operatively linked to a heterologous DNA molecule encoding a protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) selected from the group consisting of a wheat protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:10, a soybean protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:12, cotton protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:16, a sugar beet protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:18, an oilseed rape protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:20, a rice protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:22, a sorghum protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:24, and a sugar cane protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:37. More preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) is selected from the group consisting of a wheat protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:10, a soybean protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:12, and a sugar beet protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:18.



Particularly preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes a protein from an *Arabidopsis* species having protox-1 activity or protox-2 activity, preferably wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:2 or SEQ ID NO:4.

Particularly preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes a protein from maize having protox-1 activity or protox-2 activity, preferably wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence set forth in set forth in SEQ ID NO:6 or SEQ ID NO:8.

Particularly preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes a protein from wheat having protox-1 activity preferably wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:10.

Particularly preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes a protein from soybean having protox-1 activity, preferably wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:12.

Particularly preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes a protein from cotton having protox-1 activity, preferably wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:16.

Particularly preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes a protein from sugar beet having protox-1 activity, preferably wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:18.

Particularly preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes a protein from oilseed rape having protox-1 activity, preferably wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:20.

Particularly preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes a protein from rice having protox-1 activity, preferably wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:22.

Particularly preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes a protein from sorghum having protox-1 activity, preferably wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:24.

Particularly preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes a protein from sugar cane having protox-1 activity, preferably wherein the protein comprises the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:37.

The invention also embodies a chimeric gene, which comprises an expression cassette comprising essentially a promoter, but especially a promoter that is active in a plant, operatively linked to the DNA molecule encoding an protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from a eukaryotic organism according to the invention, which is resistant to herbicides at levels that

5 inhibit the corresponding unmodified version of the enzyme. Preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes an protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from a plant selected from the group consisting of *Arabidopsis*, sugar cane, soybean, barley, cotton, tobacco, sugar beet, oilseed rape, maize, wheat, sorghum, rye, oats, turf and forage grasses, millet, forage and rice. More preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes an

10 protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from a plant selected from the group consisting of soybean, cotton, tobacco, sugar beet, oilseed rape, maize, wheat, sorghum, rye, oats, turf grass, and rice. Particularly preferred is a chimeric gene, wherein the DNA molecule encodes an protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme from a plant selected from the group consisting of *Arabidopsis*, soybean, cotton, sugar beet, oilseed rape, maize, wheat, sorghum, and rice.

15 Encompassed by the present invention is a chimeric gene comprising a promoter that is active in a plant operatively linked to the DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a eukaryotic protox having at least one amino acid modification, wherein the amino acid modification has the property of conferring resistance to a protox inhibitor.

20 Also encompassed by the present invention is a chimeric gene comprising a promoter that is active in a plant operatively linked to the DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox having a first amino acid substitution and a second amino acid substitution; the first amino acid substitution having the property of conferring resistance to a protox inhibitor; and the second amino acid substitution

25 having the property of enhancing the resistance conferred by the first amino acid substitution. Preferred is the chimeric gene additionally comprising a signal sequence operatively linked to the DNA molecule, wherein the signal sequence is capable of targeting the protein encoded by the DNA molecule into the chloroplast or in the mitochondria.

The chimeric gene according to the invention may in addition further comprise a signal

30 sequence operatively linked to the DNA molecule, wherein the signal sequence is capable of

targeting the protein encoded by the DNA molecule into the chloroplast. The chimeric gene according to the invention may in addition further comprise a signal sequence operatively linked to the DNA molecule, wherein the signal sequence is capable of targeting the protein encoded by the DNA molecule into the mitochondria.

5 Also encompassed by the present invention is any of the DNA sequences mentioned herein before, which is stably integrated into a host genome.

The invention further relates to a recombinant DNA molecule comprising a plant protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) or a functionally equivalent derivative thereof.

10 The invention further relates to a recombinant DNA vector comprising the recombinant DNA molecule of the invention.

A further object of the invention is a recombinant vector comprising the chimeric gene according to the invention, wherein the vector is capable of being stably transformed into a host cell.

15 A further object of the invention is a recombinant vector comprising the chimeric gene according to the invention, wherein the vector is capable of being stably transformed into a plant, plant seeds, plant tissue or plant cell. Preferred is a recombinant vector comprising the chimeric gene according to the invention, wherein the vector is capable of being stably transformed into a plant. The plant, plant seeds, plant tissue or plant cell stably transformed with the vector is capable of expressing the DNA molecule encoding a protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox). Preferred is a recombinant vector, wherein the plant, plant seeds, plant tissue or plant cell stably transformed with the the vector is capable of expressing the DNA molecule encoding a protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) from a plant that is resistant to herbicides at levels that inhibit the corresponding unmodified version of the enzyme.

25 Preferred is a recombinant vector comprising the chimeric gene comprising a promoter active in a plant operatively linked to a heterologous DNA molecule encoding a protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) selected from the group consisting of a wheat protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:10, a soybean protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:12, cotton protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:16, a sugar beet protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:18, an oilseed rapé protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:20, a rice protox comprising the sequence set

forth in SEQ ID NO:22, a sorghum protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:24, and a sugar cane protox comprising the sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:37, wherein the vector is capable of being stably transformed into a host cell.

Also preferred is recombinant vector comprising the chimeric gene comprising a promoter that is active in a plant operatively linked to the DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox having a first amino acid substitution and a second amino acid substitution; the first amino acid substitution having the property of conferring resistance to a protox inhibitor; and the second amino acid substitution having the property of enhancing the resistance conferred by the first amino acid substitution, wherein the vector is capable of being stably transformed into a plant cell.

Also encompassed by the present invention is a host cell stably transformed with the vector according to the invention, wherein the host cell is capable of expressing the DNA molecule. Preferred is a host cell selected from the group consisting of a plant cell, a bacterial cell, a yeast cell, and an insect cell.

The present invention is further directed to plants and the progeny thereof, plant tissue and plant seeds tolerant to herbicides that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity in these plants, wherein the tolerance is conferred by a gene expressing a modified inhibitor-resistant protox enzyme as taught herein. Representative plants include any plants to which these herbicides may be applied for their normally intended purpose. Preferred are agronomically important crops, i.e., angiosperms and gymnosperms such as *Arabidopsis*, sugar cane, soybean, barley, cotton, tobacco, sugar beet, oilseed rape, maize, wheat, sorghum, rye, oats, tomato, potato, turf and forage grasses, millet, forage, and rice and the like. More preferred are agronomically important crops, i.e., angiosperms and gymnosperms such as *Arabidopsis*, cotton, soybean, oilseed rape, sugar beet, maize, rice, wheat, barley, oats, rye, sorghum, millet, turf, forage, turf grasses. Particularly preferred are agronomically important crops, i.e., angiosperms and gymnosperms such as *Arabidopsis*, soybean, cotton, sugar beet, oilseed rape, maize, wheat, sorghum, and rice.

Preferred is a plant comprising the DNA molecule encoding a modified protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) comprising a plant protox having a first amino acid substitution and a second amino acid substitution; the first amino acid substitution having the

property of conferring resistance to a protox inhibitor; and the second amino acid substitution having the property of enhancing the resistance conferred by the first amino acid substitution, wherein the DNA molecule is expressed in the plant and confers upon the plant tolerance to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit naturally occurring protox activity. Preferred is a plant, wherein the DNA molecule replaces a corresponding naturally occurring protox coding sequence.

Comprised by the present invention is a plant and the progeny thereof comprising the chimeric gene according to the invention, wherein the chimeric gene confers upon the plant tolerance to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit naturally occurring protox activity.

Encompassed by the present invention are transgenic plant tissue, including plants and the progeny thereof, seeds, and cultured tissue, stably transformed with at least one chimeric gene according to the invention. Preferred is transgenic plant tissue, including plants, seeds, and cultured tissue, stably transformed with at least one chimeric gene that comprises an expression cassette comprising essentially a promoter, but especially a promoter that is active in a plant, operatively linked to the DNA molecule encoding an protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) enzyme that is resistant to herbicides at levels that inhibit the corresponding unmodified version of the enzyme in the plant tissue.

The present invention is further directed to plants, plant tissue, plant seeds, and plant cells tolerant to herbicides that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity in these plants, wherein the tolerance is conferred by increasing expression of wild-type herbicide-sensitive protox. This results in a level of a protox enzyme in the plant cell at least sufficient to overcome growth inhibition caused by the herbicide. The level of expressed enzyme generally is at least two times, preferably at least five times, and more preferably at least ten times the natively expressed amount. Increased expression may be due to multiple copies of a wild-type protox gene; multiple occurrences of the coding sequence within the gene (*i.e.* gene amplification) or a mutation in the non-coding, regulatory sequence of the endogenous gene in the plant cell. Plants having such altered gene activity can be obtained by direct selection in plants by methods known in the art (see, *e.g.* U.S. Patent No. 5,162,602, and U.S. Patent No. 4,761,373, and references cited therein). These plants also may be obtained by genetic engineering techniques known in the art. Increased expression of a herbicide-sensitive protox gene can also be accomplished by stably transforming a plant cell with a recombinant or chimeric DNA molecule comprising a promoter

capable of driving expression of an associated structural gene in a plant cell operatively linked to a homologous or heterologous structural gene encoding the protox enzyme.

The recombinant DNA molecules of the invention can be introduced into the plant cell in a number of art-recognized ways. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the choice of method might depend on the type of plant, i.e. monocot or dicot, targeted for transformation. Suitable methods of transforming plant cells include microinjection (Crossway *et al.*, *BioTechniques* 4:320-334 (1986)), electroporation (Riggs *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 83:5602-5606 (1986), *Agrobacterium* mediated transformation (Hinchey *et al.*, *Biotechnology* 6:915-921 (1988)), direct gene transfer (Paszkowski *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 3:2717-2722 (1984)), ballistic particle acceleration using devices available from Agracetus, Inc., Madison, Wisconsin and Dupont, Inc., Wilmington, Delaware (*see, for example*, Sanford *et al.*, U.S. Patent 4,945,050; and McCabe *et al.*, *Biotechnology* 6:923-926 (1988)), protoplast transformation/regeneration methods (*see* U.S. Patent No. 5,350,689 issued Sept. 27, 1994 to Ciba-Geigy Corp.), and pollen transformation (*see* U.S. Patent No. 5,629,183). Also see, Weissinger *et al.*, *Annual Rev. Genet.* 22:421-477 (1988); Sanford *et al.*, *Particulate Science and Technology* 5:27-37 (1987)(onion); Christou *et al.*, *Plant Physiol.* 87:671-674 (1988)(soybean); McCabe *et al.*, *Bio/Technology* 6:923-926 (1988)(soybean); Datta *et al.*, *Bio/Technology* 8:736-740 (1990)(rice); Klein *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 85:4305-4309 (1988)(maize); Klein *et al.*, *Bio/Technology* 6:559-563 (1988)(maize); Klein *et al.*, *Plant Physiol.* 91:440-444 (1988)(maize); Fromm *et al.*, *Bio/Technology* 8:833-839 (1990); Gordon-Kamm *et al.*, *Plant Cell* 2:603-618 (1990) (maize); and U.S. Patent Nos. 5,591,616 and 5,679,558 (rice).

Comprised within the scope of the present invention are transgenic plants, in particular transgenic fertile plants transformed by means of the aforescribed processes and their asexual and/or sexual progeny, which still are resistant or at least tolerant to inhibition by a herbicide at levels that normally are inhibitory to the naturally occurring protox activity in the plant. Progeny plants also include plants with a different genetic background than the parent plant, which plants result from a backcrossing program and still comprise in their genome the herbicide resistance trait according to the invention. Very especially preferred are hybrid plants that are resistant or at least tolerant to inhibition by a herbicide at levels that normally are inhibitory to the naturally occurring protox activity in the plant.

The transgenic plant according to the invention may be a dicotyledonous or a monocotyledonous plant. Preferred are monocotyledonous plants of the *Graminaceae* family involving *Lolium*, *Zea*, *Triticum*, *Triticale*, *Sorghum*, *Saccharum*, *Bromus*, *Oryzae*, *Avena*, *Hordeum*, *Secale* and *Setaria* plants. More preferred are transgenic maize, wheat, barley, sorghum, rye, oats, sugar cane, turf and forage grasses, millet and rice. Especially preferred are maize, wheat, sorghum, rye, oats, turf grasses and rice.

Among the dicotyledonous plants *Arabidopsis*, soybean, cotton, sugar beet, oilseed rape, tobacco, tomato, potato, and sunflower are more preferred herein. Especially preferred are soybean, cotton, tobacco, sugar beet, tomato, potato, and oilseed rape.

The expression 'progeny' is understood to embrace both, "asexually" and "sexually" generated progeny of transgenic plants. This definition is also meant to include all mutants and variants obtainable by means of known processes, such as for example cell fusion or mutant selection and that still exhibit the characteristic properties of the initial transformed plant, together with all crossing and fusion products of the transformed plant material. This also includes progeny plants that result from a backcrossing program, as long as the progeny plants still contain the herbicide resistant trait according to the invention.

Another object of the invention concerns the proliferation material of transgenic plants. The proliferation material of transgenic plants is defined relative to the invention as any plant material that may be propagated sexually or asexually *in vivo* or *in vitro*. Particularly preferred within the scope of the present invention are protoplasts, cells, calli, tissues, organs, seeds, embryos, pollen, egg cells, zygotes, together with any other propagating material obtained from transgenic plants.

Parts of plants, such as for example flowers, stems, fruits, leaves, roots originating in transgenic plants or their progeny previously transformed by means of the process of the invention and therefore consisting at least in part of transgenic cells, are also an object of the present invention.

A further object of the invention is a method of producing plants, protoplasts, cells, calli, tissues, organs, seeds, embryos, pollen, egg cells, zygotes, together with any other propagating material, parts of plants, such as for example flowers, stems, fruits, leaves, roots originating in transgenic plants or their progeny previously transformed by means of the process of the

invention, which therefore produce an inhibitor resistant form of a plant protox enzyme by transforming the plant, plant parts with the DNA according to the invention. Preferred is a method of producing a host cell comprising an isolated DNA molecule encoding a protein from a eukaryote having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity comprising transforming the host cell with a recombinant vector molecule according to the invention. Further preferred is a method of producing a plant cell comprising an isolated DNA molecule encoding a protein from a eukaryote having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity comprising transforming the plant cell with a recombinant vector molecule according to the invention. Preferred is a method of producing transgenic progeny of a transgenic parent plant comprising an isolated DNA molecule encoding a protein from a eukaryote having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity comprising transforming the parent plant with a recombinant vector molecule according to the invention and transferring the herbicide tolerant trait to the progeny of the transgenic parent plant involving known plant breeding techniques.

Preferred is a method for the production of plants, plant tissues, plant seeds and plant parts, which produce an inhibitor-resistant form of the plant protox enzyme, wherein the plants, plant tissues, plant seeds and plant parts have been stably transformed with a structural gene encoding the resistant protox enzyme. Particularly preferred is a method for the production of plants, plant tissues, plant seeds and plant parts, wherein the plants, plant tissues, plant seeds and plant parts have been stably transformed with the DNA according to the invention. Especially preferred is a method for the production of the plants, plant tissues, plant seeds and plant parts, which produce an inhibitor-resistant form of the plant protox enzyme, wherein the plants, plant tissues, plant seeds and plant parts have been prepared by direct selection techniques whereby herbicide resistant lines are isolated, characterized and developed.

The genetic properties engineered into the transgenic seeds and plants described above are passed on by sexual reproduction or vegetative growth and can thus be maintained and propagated in progeny plants. Generally the maintenance and propagation make use of known agricultural methods developed to fit specific purposes such as tilling, sowing or harvesting. Specialized processes such as hydroponics or greenhouse technologies can also be applied. As the growing crop is vulnerable to attack and damages caused by insects or infections as well as to competition by weed plants, measures are undertaken to control weeds, plant diseases, insects,



nematodes, and other adverse conditions to improve yield. These include mechanical measures such a tillage of the soil or removal of weeds and infected plants, as well as the application of agrochemicals such as herbicides, fungicides, gametocides, nematocides, growth regulants, ripening agents and insecticides.

5           Use of the advantageous genetic properties of the transgenic plants and seeds according to the invention can further be made in plant breeding that aims at the development of plants with improved properties such as tolerance of pests, herbicide tolerance, or stress tolerance, improved nutritional value, increased yield, or improved structure causing less loss from lodging or shattering. The various breeding steps are characterized by well-defined human intervention such  
10 as selecting the lines to be crossed, directing pollination of the parental lines, or selecting appropriate progeny plants. Depending on the desired properties different breeding measures are taken. The relevant techniques are well known in the art and include but are not limited to hybridization, inbreeding, backcross breeding, multiline breeding, variety blend, interspecific hybridization, aneuploid techniques, etc. Hybridization techniques also include the sterilization  
15 of plants to yield male or female sterile plants by mechanical, chemical or biochemical means. Cross pollination of a male sterile plant with pollen of a different line assures that the genome of the male sterile but female fertile plant will uniformly obtain properties of both parental lines. Thus, the transgenic seeds and plants according to the invention can be used for the breeding of improved plant lines that for example increase the effectiveness of conventional methods such as  
20 herbicide or pesticide treatment or allow to dispense with the methods due to their modified genetic properties. Alternatively new crops with improved stress tolerance can be obtained that, due to their optimized genetic "equipment", yield harvested product of better quality than products that were not able to tolerate comparable adverse developmental conditions.

          In seeds production germination quality and uniformity of seeds are essential product  
25 characteristics, whereas germination quality and uniformity of seeds harvested and sold by the farmer is not important. As it is difficult to keep a crop free from other crop and weed seeds, to control seedborne diseases, and to produce seed with good germination, fairly extensive and well-defined seed production practices have been developed by seed producers, who are experienced in the art of growing, conditioning and marketing of pure seed. Thus, it is common  
30 practice for the farmer to buy certified seed meeting specific quality standards instead of using

seed harvested from his own crop. Propagation material to be used as seeds is customarily treated with a protectant coating comprising herbicides, insecticides, fungicides, bactericides, nematocides, molluscicides or mixtures thereof. Customarily used protectant coatings comprise compounds such as captan, carboxin, thiram (TMTD<sup>®</sup>), methalaxyl (Apron<sup>®</sup>), and pirimiphos--

5 methyl (Actellic<sup>®</sup>). If desired these compounds are formulated together with further carriers, surfactants or application-promoting adjuvants customarily employed in the art of formulation to provide protection against damage caused by bacterial, fungal or animal pests. The protectant coatings may be applied by impregnating propagation material with a liquid formulation or by coating with a combined wet or dry formulation. Other methods of application are also possible

10 such as treatment directed at the buds or the fruit.

It is thus a further object of the present invention to provide plant propagation material for cultivated plants, but especially plant seed that is treated with an seed protectant coating customarily used in seed treatment.

It is a further aspect of the present invention to provide new agricultural methods such as

15 the methods exemplified above, which are characterized by the use of transgenic plants, transgenic plant material, or transgenic seed according to the present invention. Comprised by the present invention is an agricultural method, wherein a transgenic plant or the progeny thereof is used comprising a chimeric gene according to the invention in an amount sufficient to express herbicide resistant forms of herbicide target proteins in a plant to confer tolerance to the

20 herbicide.

To breed progeny from plants transformed according to the method of the present invention, a method such as that which follows may be used: maize plants produced as described in the examples set forth below are grown in pots in a greenhouse or in soil, as is known in the art, and permitted to flower. Pollen is obtained from the mature tassel and used to pollinate the

25 ears of the same plant, sibling plants, or any desirable maize plant. Similarly, the ear developing on the transformed plant may be pollinated by pollen obtained from the same plant, sibling plants, or any desirable maize plant. Transformed progeny obtained by this method may be distinguished from non-transformed progeny by the presence of the introduced gene(s) and/or accompanying DNA (genotype), or the phenotype conferred. The transformed progeny may

30 similarly be selfed or crossed to other plants, as is normally done with any plant carrying a

desirable trait. Similarly, tobacco or other transformed plants produced by this method may be selfed or crossed as is known in the art in order to produce progeny with desired characteristics. Similarly, other transgenic organisms produced by a combination of the methods known in the art and this invention may be bred as is known in the art in order to produce progeny with desired characteristics.

The modified inhibitor-resistant protox enzymes of the invention have at least one amino acid substitution, addition or deletion relative to their naturally occurring counterpart (i.e. inhibitor-sensitive forms that occur naturally in a plant without being manipulated, either directly *via* recombinant DNA methodology or indirectly *via* selective breeding, etc., by man). Amino acid positions that may be modified to yield an inhibitor-resistant form of the protox enzyme, or enhance inhibitor resistance, are indicated in bold type in Table 1A in the context of plant protox-1 sequences from *Arabidopsis*, maize, soybean, cotton, sugar beet, oilseed rape, rice, sorghum, wheat, and sugar cane. The skilled artisan will appreciate that equivalent changes may be made to any plant protox gene having a structure sufficiently similar to the protox enzyme sequences shown herein to allow alignment and identification of those amino acids that are modified according to the invention to generate inhibitor-resistant forms of the enzyme. Such additional plant protox genes may be obtained using standard techniques as described in International application no. PCT/IB95/00452 filed June 8, 1995, published Dec. 21, 1995 as WO 95/34659 whose relevant parts are herein incorporated by reference.

DNA molecules encoding the herbicide resistant protox coding sequences taught herein may be genetically engineered for optimal expression in a crop plant. This may include altering the coding sequence of the resistance allele for optimal expression in the crop species of interest. Methods for modifying coding sequences to achieve optimal expression in a particular crop species are well known (see, *e.g.* Perlak *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88: 3324 (1991); Koziel *et al.*, *Bio/technol.* 11: 194 (1993)).

Genetically engineering a protox coding sequence for optimal expression may also include operatively linking the appropriate regulatory sequences (i.e. promoter, signal sequence, transcriptional terminators). Examples of promoters capable of functioning in plants or plant cells (i.e., those capable of driving expression of the associated structural genes such as protox in plant cells) include the cauliflower mosaic virus (CaMV) 19S or 35S promoters and CaMV

double promoters; nopaline synthase promoters; pathogenesis-related (PR) protein promoters; small subunit of ribulose biphosphate carboxylase (ssuRUBISCO) promoters, heat shock protein promoter from Brassica with reference to EPA 0 559 603 (hsp80 promoter), *Arabidopsis* actin promoter and the SuperMas promoter with reference to WO 95/14098 and the like. Preferred promoters will be those that confer high level constitutive expression or, more preferably, those that confer specific high level expression in the tissues susceptible to damage by the herbicide. Preferred promoters are the rice actin promoter (McElroy *et al.*, *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 231: 150 (1991)), maize ubiquitin promoter (EP 0 342 926; Taylor *et al.*, *Plant Cell Rep.* 12: 491 (1993)), and the PR-1 promoter from tobacco, *Arabidopsis*, or maize (see U.S. Patent No. 5,614,395 to Ryals *et al.*, incorporated by reference herein in its entirety). The promoters themselves may be modified to manipulate promoter strength to increase protox expression, in accordance with art-recognized procedures.

The inventors have also discovered that another preferred promoter for use with the inhibitor-resistant protox coding sequences is the promoter associated with the native protox gene (i.e. the protox promoter; *see* copending, co-owned U.S. Patent Application No. 08/808,323, entitled "Promoters from Protoporphyrinogen Oxidase Genes", incorporated by reference herein in its entirety.) The promoter sequence from an *Arabidopsis* protox-1 gene is set forth in SEQ ID NO:13, the promoter sequence from a maize protox-1 gene is set forth in SEQ ID NO:14, and the promoter sequence from a sugar beet protox-1 gene is set forth in SEQ ID NO:26.

Since the protox promoter itself is suitable for expression of inhibitor-resistant protox coding sequences, the modifications taught herein may be made directly on the native protox gene present in the plant cell genome without the need to construct a chimeric gene with heterologous regulatory sequences. Such modifications can be made via directed mutagenesis techniques such as homologous recombination and selected for based on the resulting herbicide-resistance phenotype (*see, e.g.* Example 10, Pazkowski *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 7: 4021-4026 (1988), and U.S. Patent No. 5,487,992, particularly columns 18-19 and Example 8). An added advantage of this approach is that besides containing the native protox promoter, the resulting modified gene will also include any other regulatory elements, such as signal or transit peptide coding sequences, which are part of the native gene.

In the event of transformation of the nuclear genome, signal or transit peptides may be fused to the protox coding sequence in chimeric DNA constructs of the invention to direct transport of the expressed protox enzyme to the desired site of action. Examples of signal peptides include those natively linked to the plant pathogenesis-related proteins, e.g. PR-1, PR-2, and the like. See, e.g., Payne *et al.*, *Plant Mol. Biol.* 11:89-94 (1988). Examples of transit peptides include the chloroplast transit peptides such as those described in Von Heijne *et al.*, *Plant Mol. Biol. Rep.* 9:104-126 (1991); Mazur *et al.*, *Plant Physiol.* 85: 1110 (1987); Vorst *et al.*, *Gene* 65: 59 (1988), and mitochondrial transit peptides such as those described in Boutry *et al.*, *Nature* 328:340-342 (1987). Chloroplast and mitochondrial transit peptides are contemplated to be particularly useful with the present invention as protox enzymatic activity typically occurs within the mitochondria and chloroplast. Most preferred for use are chloroplast transit peptides, as inhibition of the protox enzymatic activity in the chloroplasts is contemplated to be the primary basis for the action of protox-inhibiting herbicides (Witkowski and Halling, *Plant Physiol.* 87: 632 (1988); Lehen *et al.*, *Pestic. Biochem. Physiol.* 37: 239 (1990); Duke *et al.*, *Weed Sci.* 39: 465 (1991)). Also included are sequences that result in localization of the encoded protein to various cellular compartments such as the vacuole. See, for example, Neuhaus *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88: 10362-10366 (1991) and Chrispeels, *Ann. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* 42: 21-53 (1991). The relevant disclosures of these publications are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

Chimeric genes of the invention may contain multiple copies of a promoter or multiple copies of the protox structural genes. In addition, the construct(s) may include coding sequences for markers and coding sequences for other peptides such as signal or transit peptides, each in proper reading frame with the other functional elements in the DNA molecule. The preparation of such constructs are within the ordinary level of skill in the art.

Useful markers include peptides providing herbicide, antibiotic or drug resistance, such as, for example, resistance to hygromycin, kanamycin, G418, gentamycin, lincomycin, methotrexate, glyphosate, phosphinothricin, or the like. These markers can be used to select cells transformed with the chimeric DNA constructs of the invention from untransformed cells. Other useful markers are peptidic enzymes that can be easily detected by a visible reaction, for example a color reaction, for example luciferase,  $\beta$ -glucuronidase, or  $\beta$ -galactosidase.

The method of positive selection of genetically transformed cells into which a desired nucleotide sequence can be incorporated by providing the transformed cells with a selective advantage is herein incorporated by reference as WO 94/20627.

Where a herbicide resistant protox allele is obtained via directed mutation of the native gene in a crop plant or plant cell culture from which a crop plant can be regenerated, it may be moved into commercial varieties using traditional breeding techniques to develop a herbicide tolerant crop without the need for genetically engineering the modified coding sequence and transforming it into the plant. Alternatively, the herbicide resistant gene may be isolated, genetically engineered for optimal expression and then transformed into the desired variety.

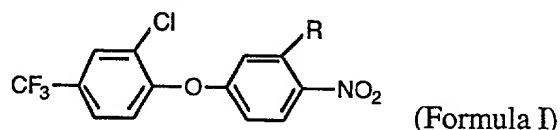
Genes encoding altered protox resistant to a protox inhibitor can also be used as selectable markers in plant cell transformation methods. For example, plants, plant tissue or plant cells transformed with a transgene can also be transformed with a gene encoding an altered protox capable of being expressed by the plant. The thus-transformed cells are transferred to medium containing the protox inhibitor wherein only the transformed cells will survive. Protox inhibitors contemplated to be particularly useful as selective agents are the diphenylethers {e.g. acifluorfen, 5-[2-chloro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenoxy]-2-nitrobenzoic acid; its methyl ester; or oxyfluorfen, 2-chloro-1-(3-ethoxy-4-nitrophenoxy)-4-(trifluorobenzene)}, oxidiazoles, (e.g. oxidiazon, 3-[2,4-dichloro-5-(1-methylethoxy)phenyl]-5-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-(3*H*)-one), cyclic imides (e.g. S-23142, *N*-(4-chloro-2-fluoro-5-propargyloxyphenyl)-3,4,5,6-tetrahydrophthalimide; chlorophthalim, *N*-(4-chlorophenyl)-3,4,5,6-tetrahydrophthalimide), phenyl pyrazoles (e.g. TNPP-ethyl, ethyl 2-[1-(2,3,4-trichlorophenyl)-4-nitropyrzoly-5-oxy]propionate; M&B 39279), pyridine derivatives (e.g. LS 82-556), and phenopylate and its *O*-phenylpyrrolidino- and piperidinocarbamate analogs and bicyclic triazolones as disclosed in the International patent application WO 92/04827; EP 532146).

The method is applicable to any plant cell capable of being transformed with an altered protox-encoding gene, and can be used with any transgene of interest. Expression of the transgene and the protox gene can be driven by the same promoter functional on plant cells, or by separate promoters.

Modified inhibitor-resistant protox enzymes of the present invention are resistant to herbicides that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity. The herbicides that inhibit protox

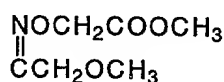
include many different structural classes of molecules (Duke *et al.*, *Weed Sci.* 39: 465 (1991); Nandihalli *et al.*, *Pesticide Biochem. Physiol.* 43: 193 (1992); Matringe *et al.*, *FEBS Lett.* 245: 35 (1989); Yanase and Andoh, *Pesticide Biochem. Physiol.* 35: 70 (1989)), including the diphenylethers {e.g. acifluorfen, 5-[2-chloro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenoxy]-2-nitrobenzoic acid; its methyl ester; or oxyfluorfen, 2-chloro-1-(3-ethoxy-4-nitrophenoxy)-4-(trifluorobenzene)}, oxidiazoles (e.g. oxidiazon, 3-[2,4-dichloro-5-(1-methylethoxy)phenyl]-5-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-(3*H*)-one), cyclic imides (e.g. S-23142, *N*-(4-chloro-2-fluoro-5-propargyloxyphenyl)-3,4,5,6-tetrahydrophthalimide; chlorophthalim, *N*-(4-chlorophenyl)-3,4,5,6-tetrahydrophthalimide), phenyl pyrazoles (e.g. TNPP-ethyl, ethyl 2-[1-(2,3,4-trichlorophenyl)-4-nitropyrazolyl-5-oxy]propionate; M&B 39279), pyridine derivatives (e.g. LS 82-556), and phenopylate and its *O*-phenylpyrrolidino- and piperidinocarbamate analogs.

The diphenylethers of particular significance are those having the general formula



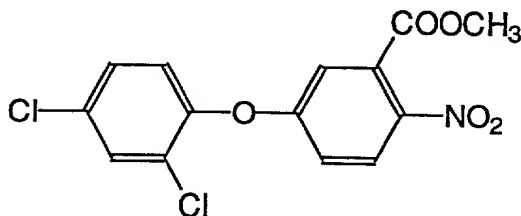
wherein R equals -COONa (Formula II), -CONHSO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (Formula III) or -COOCH<sub>2</sub>COOC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (Formula IV; see Maigrot *et al.*, *Brighton Crop Protection Conference-Weeds*: 47-51 (1989)).

Additional diphenylethers of interest are those where R equals:



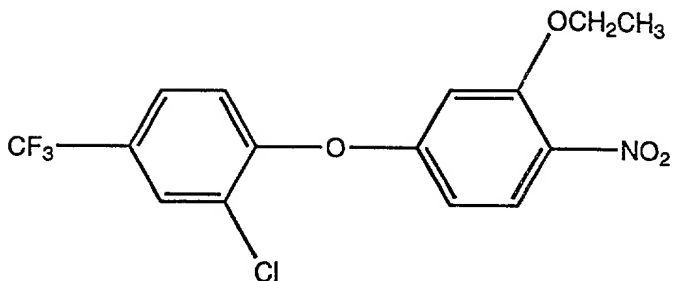
(Formula IVa; see Hayashi *et al.*, *Brighton Crop Protection Conference-Weeds*: 53-58 (1989)).

An additional diphenylether of interest is one having the formula:



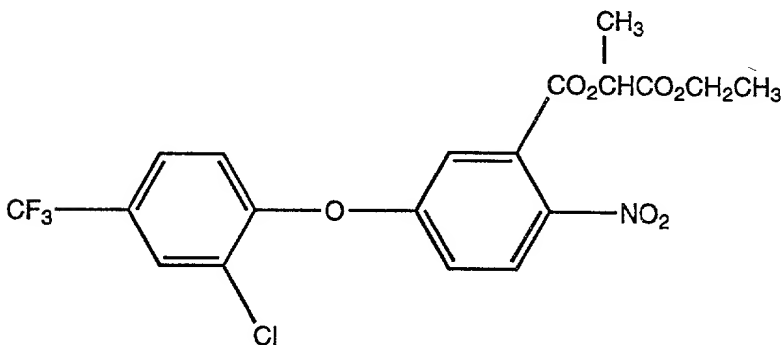
(Formula IVb; bifenox, see Dest *et al.*, *Proc. Northeast Weed Sci. Conf.* 27: 31 (1973)).

A further diphenylether of interest is one having the formula:



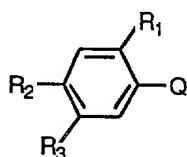
(Formula IVc; oxyfluorfen; *see* Yih and Swithenbank, *J. Agric. Food Chem.*, 23: 592 (1975))

Yet another diphenylether of interest is one having the formula:



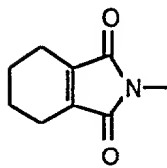
- 5 (Formula IVd; lactofen, *see* page 623 of "The Pesticide Manual", 10<sup>th</sup> ed., ed. by C. Tomlin, British Crop Protection Council, Surrey (1994))

Also of significance are the class of herbicides known as imides, having the general formula



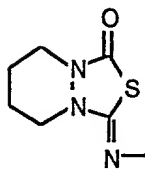
(Formula V)

- 10 wherein Q equals



(Formula VI)

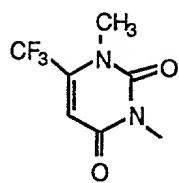
or



(Formula VII)

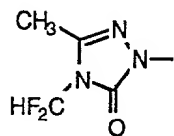
or





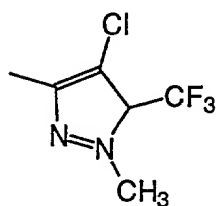
(Formula VIII)

or



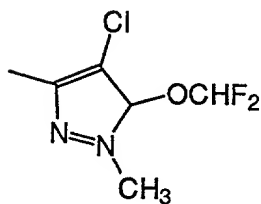
(Formula IX)

or



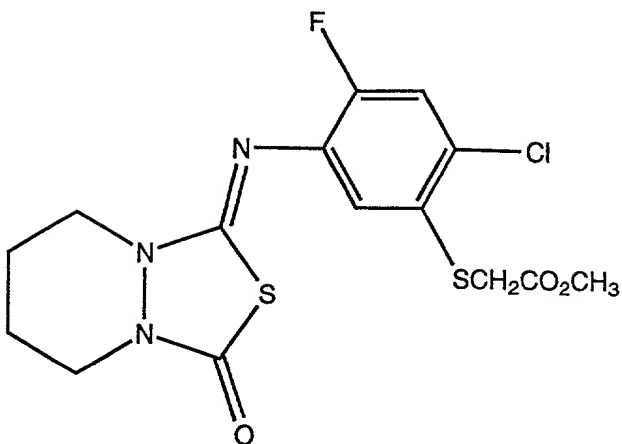
(Formula IXa)

or

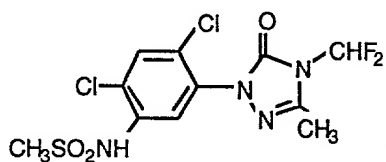


(Formula IXb)

(see Hemper *et al.* (1995) in "Proceedings of the Eighth International Congress of Pesticide Chemistry", Ragdale *et al.*, eds., Amer. Chem. Soc, Washington, D.C., pp.42-48 (1994)); and R<sub>1</sub> equals H, Cl or F, R<sub>2</sub> equals Cl and R<sub>3</sub> is an optimally substituted ether, thioether, ester, amino or alkyl group. Alternatively, R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>3</sub> together may form a 5 or 6 membered heterocyclic ring. Examples of imide herbicides of particular interest are

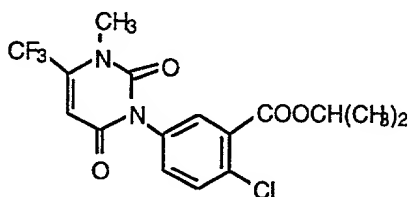


(Formula VIIa; fluthiacet-methyl, *see* Miyazawa *et al.*, *Brighton Crop Protection Conference-Weeds*, pp. 23-28 (1993))

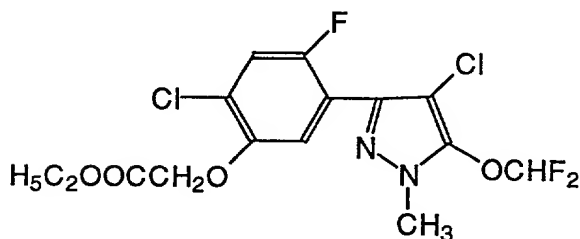


(Formula X sulfentrazone, *see* Van Saun *et al.*, *Brighton*

5 *Crop Protection Conference-Weeds*, pp. 77-82 (1991)).

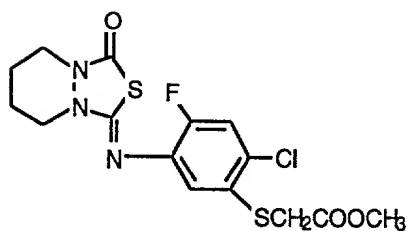


(Formula XI)

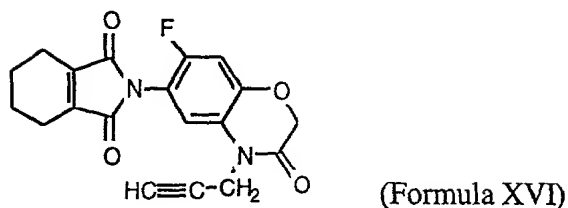
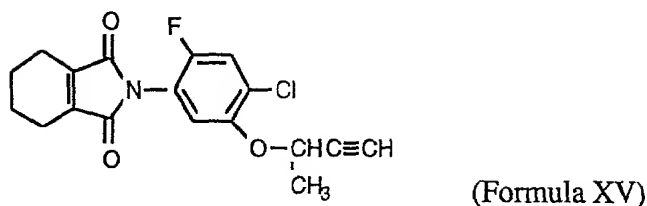
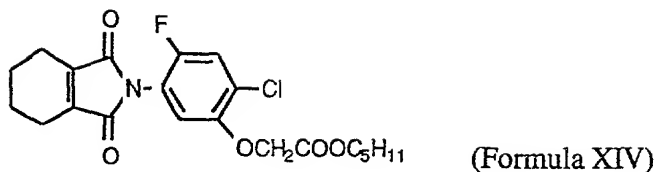


(Formula XII)

(*see* Miura *et al.*, *Brighton Crop Protection Conference-Weeds*: 35-40 (1993))

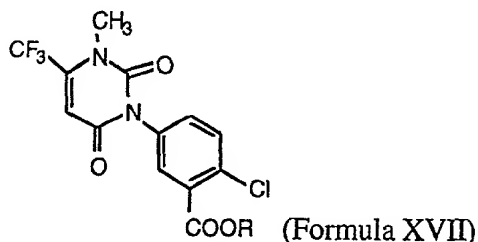


(Formula XIII)



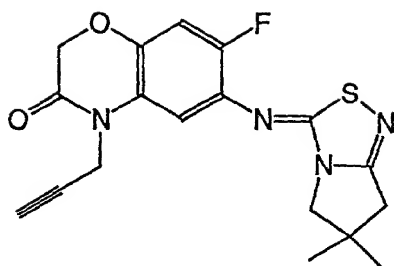
The herbicidal activity of the above compounds is described in the *Proceedings of the 1991 Brighton Crop Protection Conference, Weeds* (British Crop Protection Council) (Formulae X and XVI), *Proceedings of the 1993 Brighton Crop Protection Conference, Weeds* (British Crop Protection Council) (Formulae XII and XIII), U.S. Patent No. 4,746,352 (Formula XI) and *Abstracts of the Weed Science Society of America* vol. 33, pg. 9 (1993)(Formula XIV).

The most preferred imide herbicides are those classified as aryluracils and having the general formula



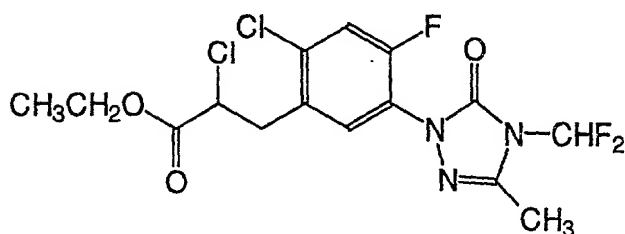
wherein R signifies the group (C<sub>2-6</sub>-alkenyloxy)carbonyl-C<sub>1-4</sub>-alkyl, as disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,183,492, herein incorporated by reference.

Also of significance are herbicides having the general formula:



(Formula XVIII; thiadiazimin)

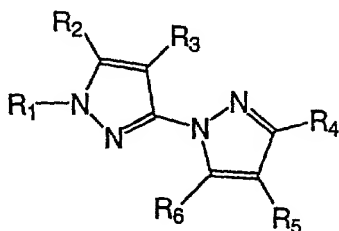
(see Weiler et al., *Brighton Crop Protection Conference-Weeds*, pp. 29-34 (1993));



(Formula XIX; carfentrazone)

(see Van Saun et al., *Brighton Crop Protection Conference-Weeds*: pp. 19-22 (1993));

N-substituted pyrazoles of the general formula:



(Formula XX)

wherein  $R_1$  is  $C_1$ - $C_4$ -alkyl, optionally substituted by one or more halogen atoms;

$R_2$  is hydrogen, or a  $C_1$ - $C_4$ -alkoxy, each of which is optionally substituted by one or more halogen atoms, or

$R_1$  and  $R_2$  together from the group  $-(CH_2)_n-X-$ , where  $X$  is bound at  $R_2$ ;

$R_3$  is hydrogen or halogen,

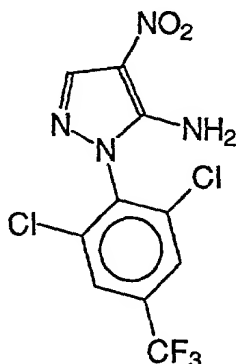
$R_4$  is hydrogen or  $C_1$ - $C_4$ -alkyl,

$R_5$  is hydrogen, nitro, cyano or the group  $-COOR_6$  or  $-CONR_7R_8$ , and

$R_6$  is hydrogen,  $C_1-C_6$ -alkyl,  $C_2-C_6$ -alkenyl or  $C_2-C_6$ -alkynyl;

(see international patent publications WO 94/08999, WO 93/10100, and U. S. Patent No. 5,405,829 assigned to Schering);

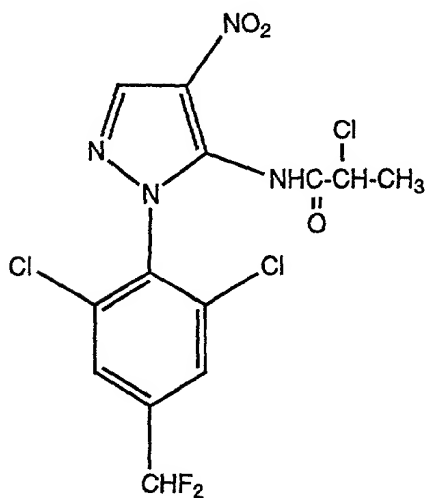
5 N-phenylpyrazoles, such as:



(Formula XXI; nipyraclufen)

(see page 621 of "The Pesticide Manual", 9th ed., ed. by C.R. Worthing, British Crop Protection Council, Surrey (1991));

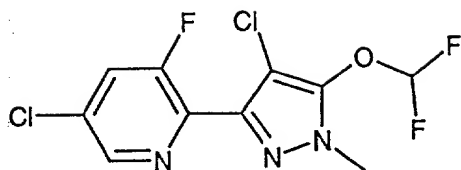
10 and 3-substituted-2-aryl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydroindazoles (Lyga *et al. Pesticide Sci.* 42:29-36 (1994)).



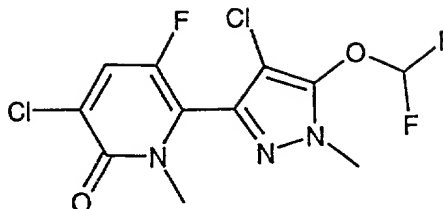
(Formula XXIIa; BAY 11340)

Also of significance are phenylpyrazoles of the type described in WO 96/01254 and WO 97/00246, both of which are hereby incorporated by reference. (Formula XXIII).

15 Also of significance are pyridyl pyrazoles such as the following:



(Formula XXIIIa)



(Formula XXIIIb)

Levels of herbicide that normally are inhibitory to the activity of protox include application rates known in the art, and that depend partly on external factors such as environment, time and method of application. For example, in the case of the imide herbicides represented by Formulae V through IX, and more particularly those represented by Formulae X through XVII, the application rates range from 0.0001 to 10 kg/ha, preferably from 0.005 to 2 kg/ha. This dosage rate or concentration of herbicide may be different, depending on the desired action and particular compound used, and can be determined by methods known in the art.

A further object of the invention is a method for controlling the growth of undesired vegetation that comprises applying to a population of the plant selected from a group consisting of *Arabidopsis*, sugar cane, soybean, barley, cotton, tobacco, sugar beet, oilseed rape, maize, wheat, sorghum, rye, oats, turf and forage grasses, millet, forage and rice and the like an effective amount of a protox-inhibiting herbicide. Preferred is a method for controlling the growth of undesired vegetation, which comprises applying to a population of the selected from the group consisting of selected from the group consisting of soybean, cotton, tobacco, sugar beet, oilseed rape, maize, wheat, sorghum, rye, oats, turf grasses and rice an effective amount of a protox-inhibiting herbicide. Particularly preferred is a method for controlling the growth of undesired vegetation, which comprises applying to a population of the selected from the group consisting of *Arabidopsis*, soybean, cotton, sugar beet, oilseed rape, maize, wheat, sorghum, and rice.

### III. Plastid Transformation and Expression

The present invention further encompasses a chimeric gene comprising a promoter capable of expression in a plant plastid operatively linked to a DNA molecule of the present invention. A preferred promoter capable of expression in a plant plastid is a promoter isolated

from the 5' flanking region upstream of the coding region of a plastid gene, which may come from the same or a different species, and the native product of which is typically found in a majority of plastid types including those present in non-green tissues. Examples of such promoters are promoters of *clpP* genes, such as the tobacco *clpP* gene promoter (WO 97/06250, incorporated herein by reference) and the *Arabidopsis clpP* gene promoter (U.S. Application No. 09/038,878, incorporated herein by reference). Other promoters that are capable of expressing a DNA molecule in plant plastids are promoters recognized by viral RNA polymerases. Preferred promoters of this type are promoters recognized by a single sub-unit RNA polymerase, such as the T7 gene 10 promoter, which is recognized by the bacteriophage T7 DNA-dependent RNA polymerase. Yet another promoter that is capable of expressing a DNA molecule in plant plastids comes from the regulatory region of the plastid 16S ribosomal RNA operon (Harris *et al.*, *Microbiol. Rev.* 58:700-754 (1994), Shinozaki *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 5:2043-2049 (1986), both of which are incorporated herein by reference). The gene encoding the T7 polymerase is preferably transformed into the nuclear genome and the T7 polymerase is targeted to the plastids using a plastid transit peptide. Expression of the DNA molecules in the plastids can be constitutive or can be inducible. These different embodiment are extensively described in WO 98/11235, incorporated herein by reference. The chimeric gene preferably further comprises a 5' untranslated sequence (5' UTR) functional in plant plastids and a plastid gene 3' untranslated sequence (3' UTR) operatively linked to a DNA molecule of the present invention. Preferably, the 3' UTR is a plastid *rps16* gene 3' untranslated sequence. In a further embodiment, the chimeric gene comprises a poly-G tract instead of a 3' untranslated sequence.

The present invention also encompasses a plastid transformation vector comprising the chimeric gene described above and flanking regions for integration into the plastid genome by homologous recombination. The plastid transformation vector may optionally comprise at least one chloroplast origin of replication. The present invention also encompasses a plant plastid transformed with such a plastid transformation vector, wherein the DNA molecule is expressible in the plant plastid. The invention also encompasses a plant or plant cell, including the progeny thereof, comprising this plant plastid. In a preferred embodiment, the plant is homoplasmic for transgenic plastids. The plants transformed in the present invention may be monocots or dicots.

A preferred monocot is maize and a preferred dicot is tobacco. Other preferred dicots are tomato and potato.

In a preferred embodiment, the present invention encompasses a chimeric gene comprising a promoter capable of expression in a plant plastid operatively linked to a DNA molecule isolated from a prokaryote or a eukaryote that encodes a native or modified protox enzyme, such as a DNA molecule that encodes a native or modified wheat, soybean, cotton, sugar beet, oilseed rape, rice, sorghum, or sugar cane protox enzyme. Such a DNA molecule is comprised in a plastid transformation vector as described above and plants homoplasmic for transgenic plastid genomes are produced. Expression in plant plastids of a DNA molecule that encodes a modified protox enzyme preferably confers upon the plant tolerance to a herbicide in amounts that inhibit naturally occurring protox activity.

In a further preferred embodiment, the present invention encompasses a chimeric gene comprising (a) a DNA molecule isolated from a plant, which in its native state encodes a polypeptide that comprises a plastid transit peptide, and a mature enzyme that is natively targeted to a plastid of the plant by the plastid transit peptide, wherein the DNA molecule is modified such that it does not encode a functional plastid transit peptide; and (b) a promoter capable of expressing the DNA molecule in a plastid, wherein the promoter is operatively linked to the DNA molecule. In one preferred embodiment, the transit peptide is mutated and thus does not allow the proper transport of the enzyme encoded by the DNA molecule to the desired cell compartment, such as the plastid. In another preferred embodiment, a portion of the transit peptide coding sequence or the entire transit peptide coding sequence is removed from the DNA molecule, preventing the enzyme from being properly targeted to the desired cell compartment.

The chimeric genes described above are inserted in plastid transformation vectors, and the present invention is therefore also directed to plants having their plastid genome transformed with such vectors, whereby the DNA molecule is expressible in plant plastids. Such plants are preferably homoplasmic for transgenic plastids.

In a preferred embodiment, a DNA molecule described immediately above encodes an enzyme that in its wild-type form is inhibited by a herbicide. In a further preferred embodiment, the DNA molecule encodes an enzyme that in its wild-type form is inhibited by a herbicide, but that comprises at least one amino acid change compared to the wild-type enzyme. Such an amino



acid change makes the enzyme resistant to compounds that naturally inhibit the wild-type enzyme. In a further preferred embodiment, the DNA molecule encodes an enzyme having protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity. In a further preferred embodiment, the transit peptide is removed from the DNA molecule as further illustrated in Examples 37-42. Plants

5 homoplasmic for transgenic plastids of the invention are resistant to high amounts of herbicides such as Formula XVII that inhibit the naturally occurring protox activity (as further illustrated in Example 44).

In another preferred embodiment, the transit peptide of a DNA molecule encoding a 5-enolpyruvyl-3-phosphoshikimate synthase (EPSP synthase) is mutated or removed. The resulting

10 DNA molecule is fused to a promoter capable of expression in plant plastids and homoplasmic plants harboring such constructs in their plastid genomes are obtained. These plants are resistant to herbicidal compounds that naturally inhibit EPSP synthase, in particular glyphosate. In another preferred embodiment, the transit peptide of a DNA molecule encoding a acetolactate synthase (ALS) is mutated or removed. The resulting DNA molecule is fused to a promoter capable of

15 expression in plant plastids and homoplasmic plants harboring such constructs in their plastid genome are obtained. These plants are resistant to herbicidal compounds that naturally inhibit ALS, in particular sulfonylureas. In another preferred embodiment, the transit peptide of a DNA molecule encoding a acetoxhydroxyacid synthase (AHAS) is mutated or removed. The resulting DNA molecule is fused to a promoter capable of expression in plant plastids and homoplasmic

20 plants harboring such constructs in their plastid genome are obtained. These plants are resistant to herbicidal compounds that naturally inhibit AHAS, in particular, imidazolinone and sulfonamide herbicides. In another preferred embodiment, the transit peptide of a DNA molecule encoding an acetylcoenzyme A carboxylase (ACCase) is mutated or removed. The resulting DNA molecule is fused to a promoter capable of expression in plant plastids and homoplasmic

25 plants harboring such constructs in their plastid genome are obtained. These plants are resistant to herbicidal compounds that naturally inhibit ACCase, in particular cyclohexanedione and arylphenoxypropanoic acid herbicides. In another preferred embodiment, the transit peptide of a DNA molecule encoding a glutamine synthase (GS) is mutated or removed. The resulting DNA molecule is fused to a promoter capable of expression in plant plastids and homoplasmic plants

30 harboring such constructs in their plastid genome are obtained. These plants are resistant to

herbicidal compounds that naturally inhibit GS, in particular phosphinothricin and methionine sulfoximine.

The present invention is also further directed to a method of obtaining herbicide-resistant plants by transforming their plastid genome with a chimeric gene comprising (a) a DNA molecule isolated from a plant, which in its native state encodes a polypeptide that comprises a plastid transit peptide, and a mature enzyme that is natively targeted to a plastid of the plant by the plastid transit peptide, wherein the DNA molecule is modified such that it does not encode a functional plastid transit peptide; and (b) a promoter capable of expressing the DNA molecule in a plastid, wherein the promoter is operatively linked to the DNA molecule. Examples of enzymes that are used in the present invention are cited immediately above, but the applicability of such a method is not limited to the cited examples.

The present invention is still further directed to a novel method for selecting a transplastomic plant cell, comprising the steps of: introducing the above-described chimeric gene into the plastome of a plant cell; expressing the encoded enzyme in the plastids of the plant cell; and selecting a cell that is resistant to a herbicidal compound that naturally inhibits the activity of the enzyme, whereby the resistant cell comprises transformed plastids. In a preferred embodiment, the enzyme is naturally inhibited by a herbicidal compound and the transgenic plant is able to grow on an amount of the herbicidal compound that naturally inhibits the activity of the enzyme. In a further preferred embodiment, the enzyme has protoporphyrinogen oxidase (protox) activity and is modified so that it that confers resistance to protox inhibitors.

A further aspect of the present invention is a novel method for plastid transformation of recalcitrant plants. The methods pioneered for plastid transformation of tobacco and lower plant species rely on non-lethal selection for resistance to antibiotics that preferentially affect the plastid translational apparatus and hence allow photo-heterotrophic transformants to outgrow heterotrophic, non-transformed tissue.

Several factors have likely contributed to the difficulties encountered with plastid transformation of monocots and other dicots. For example, the maize chloroplast 16S ribosomal RNA (rRNA) is naturally resistant to spectinomycin because of the presence of a G at position 1138 in the *Zea mays* 16S rDNA gene (Harris *et al.*, 1994). Thus, utilization of 16s rRNA point mutations that confer spectinomycin and/or streptomycin resistance which have been used

successfully as selectable chloroplast markers in *Chlamydomonas* and tobacco (Boynton and Gillham (1993) In Wu, R. [Ed.] *Methods in Enzymology* Vol 217. Academic Press, San Diego, pp. 510-536; Svab *et al.* (1990) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 87: 8526-8530) is not feasible for maize. Natural spectinomycin and streptomycin resistance in maize also obviates the use of the bacterial *aadA* gene encoding aminoglycoside 3''-adenyltransferase, which results in dominant spectinomycin and streptomycin resistance and allows a 100-fold increase in tobacco chloroplast transformation efficiency (Svab and Maliga (1993) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 90: 913-917). Use of kanamycin (the only other antibiotic proven to be useful for chloroplast transformation) is also problematic due to a large excess (ca. 50:1) of nuclear vs. chloroplast-encoded resistance in tobacco following bombardment of the bacterial *nptII* gene encoding neomycin phosphotransferase (Carrer *et al.* (1993) *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 241: 49-56). This has been shown to result from both a high frequency of spontaneous nuclear resistance mutants as well as integration of *nptII* into the nuclear genome. Since *nptII* is also a highly effective selectable marker for maize nuclear transformation it is reasonable to expect similar background levels to that observed in tobacco. Spontaneous resistance and a significant excess of selectable marker integration by random, illegitimate recombination into the nuclear genome, rather than homologous integration into the chloroplast genome, would make recovery of bona fide chloroplast transformants difficult if not impossible.

A more fundamental reason for the difficulties encountered with plastid transformation in plant species other than tobacco may have to do with the non-photosynthetic nature of many regenerable cultured plant tissues, especially in maize and *Arabidopsis*. Tobacco is an exception in that cultured vegetative tissues are regenerable and contain mature differentiated chloroplasts that are photosynthetically competent in the presence of sucrose. Consequently, the current system for selecting tobacco plastid transformants relies on the faster growth rate of transformed cells that can use both reduced and inorganic carbon sources. Moreover, transformed cells do not suffer the chloroplast membrane damage that results from inhibition of plastid protein synthesis in the light. This expression of selectable markers that act preferentially on photosynthetic cells, driven by promoters that have high activity in differentiated chloroplasts, is unlikely to work in non-green tissues containing proplastids (e.g. dark-grown maize Type I callus, somatic embryos)

or amyloplasts/leucoplasts (e.g. *Arabidopsis* root cultures). Plastid transformation in these plants requires a selectable marker that gives strong selection in all plastid types.

A preferred selectable marker for generalized plastid transformation: (1) is active only in the plastid to eliminate nuclear-transformed "escapes"; (2) has a mode of action that does not depend on photosynthetic competence or the presence of fully differentiated chloroplasts; and (3) has a level of resistance that is co-dependent on an adjustable external parameter (e.g. light), rather than being determined solely by the bulk concentration of a selective agent, so that selection pressure can vary during selection to facilitate segregation of the many-thousand plastid genome copies.

In a preferred embodiment, such a selectable marker gene involves the use of a chimeric gene comprising an isolated DNA molecule encoding a plastid-targeted enzyme having in its natural state a plastid transit peptide, wherein the DNA molecule is modified such that the transit peptide either is absent or does not function to target the enzyme to the plastid, wherein the DNA molecule is operatively linked to a promoter capable of expression in plant plastids. In a preferred embodiment, a DNA molecule of the present invention encodes an enzyme that is naturally inhibited by a herbicide. In another preferred embodiment, the DNA molecule encodes a protoporphyrinogen IX oxidase ("protox"). In a preferred embodiment, the protoporphyrinogen IX oxidase gene is from *Arabidopsis thaliana* and in a more preferred embodiment, the protoporphyrinogen IX oxidase gene is from *Arabidopsis thaliana* and comprises at least one amino acid substitution. Preferably, an amino acid substitution results in tolerance of the enzyme against inhibition by an herbicide which naturally inhibits the activity of the enzyme. Low concentrations of herbicide are thought to kill wildtype plants due to light-sensitive intermediates which build up when the plastid-localized protox enzyme is inhibited. Production of these photosensitizing compounds does not require differentiated chloroplasts or active photosynthesis, which is a key factor for successful plastid transformation of plants whose regenerable cultured tissues are of non-photosynthetic nature.

Another key feature is to have expression of the selectable marker gene in non-green plastids. In a preferred embodiment, the invention encompasses the use of promoters that are capable of expression of operatively linked DNA molecules in plastids of both green and non-green tissue. In particular, one such promoter comes from the regulatory region of the plastid 16S

ribosomal RNA operon. Another candidate is the promoter and 5' UTR from the plastid *clpP* gene. The *clpP* gene product is expressed constitutively in plastids from all plant tissues, including those that do not contain chloroplasts (Shanklin (1995) *Plant Cell* 7: 1713-22).

5 Other DNA molecules may be co-introduced in plant plastids using the method described above. In a preferred embodiment, a plastid transformation vector of the present invention contains a chimeric gene allowing for selection of transformants as described above and at least one other gene fused to a promoter capable of expression in plant plastids. The other such gene may, for example, confer resistance to insect pests, or to fungal or bacterial pathogens, or may encode one or more value-added traits.

005031 " 9250E/60

## EXAMPLES

The invention will be further described by reference to the following detailed examples. These examples are provided for purposes of illustration only, and are not intended to be limiting unless otherwise specified. Standard recombinant DNA and molecular cloning techniques used here are well known in the art and are described by Ausubel (ed.), *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, John Wiley and Sons, Inc. (1994); T. Maniatis, E. F. Fritsch and J. Sambrook, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, NY (1989); and by T.J. Silhavy, M.L. Berman, and L.W. Enquist, *Experiments with Gene Fusions*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, NY (1984).

### Section A. Isolation And Characterization Of Plant Protoporphyrinogen Oxidase (Protox) Genes

#### Example 1: Isolation of a Wheat Protox-1 cDNA Based on Sequence Homology to a Maize Protox-1 Coding Sequence

Total RNA prepared from *Triticum aestivum* (cv Kanzler) was submitted to Clontech for custom cDNA library construction in the Lambda Uni-Zap vector. Approximately 50,000 pfu of the cDNA library were plated at a density of approximately 5,000 pfu per 10 cm Petri dish and duplicate filter lifts were made onto nitrocellulose membranes (Schleicher and Schuell). The plaque lifts were probed with the maize protox-1 cDNA (SEQ ID NO:5; see Example 2 of International application no. PCT/IB95/00452, filed June 8, 1995, published Dec. 21, 1995 as WO 95/34659) labeled with 32P-dCTP by the random priming method (Life Technologies). Hybridization conditions were 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50°C. Wash conditions were 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50°C. (Church and Gilbert, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 81: 1991-1995 (1984), hereby incorporated by reference in its entirety.) Positively hybridizing plaques were purified and in vivo excised into pBluescript plasmids. The sequences of the cDNA inserts were determined by the chain termination method using dideoxy terminators labeled with fluorescent dyes (Applied Biosystems, Inc.). The longest wheat protox-

1 cDNA obtained from initial screening efforts, designated "wheat protox-1", was 1489-bp in length. Wheat protox-1 lacks coding sequence for the transit peptide plus approximately 126 amino acids of the mature coding sequence based on comparison with the other known plant protox peptide sequences.

5 A second screen was performed to obtain a longer wheat protox cDNA. For this screen, a *Triticum aestivum* (cv Kanzler) cDNA library was prepared internally using the lambda Uni-Zap vector. Approximately 200,000 pfu of the cDNA library was screened as indicated above, except that the wheat protox-1 cDNA was used as a probe and hybridization and wash conditions were at 65°C instead of 50°C. The longest wheat cDNA obtained from this screening effort,  
10 designated "wheat protox-1a", was 1811-bp in length. The nucleotide sequence of this cDNA and the amino acid sequence it encodes are set forth in SEQ ID NOs:9 and 10, respectively. Based on comparison with the other known plant protox peptide sequences and with corresponding genomic sequence, this cDNA is either full-length or missing only a few transit peptide codons (Table 1A). This wheat protein sequence is 91% identical (95% similar) to the  
15 maize protox-1 protein sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:6.

Wheat protox-1a, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited March 19, 1996, as pWDC-13 (NRRL #B21545).

#### 20 Example 2: Isolation of a Soybean Protox-1 cDNA Based on Sequence Homology to an *Arabidopsis* Protox-1 Coding Sequence

A Lambda Uni-Zap cDNA library prepared from soybean (v Williams 82, epicotyls) was purchased from Stratagene. Approximately 50,000 pfu of the library was plated at a density of approximately 5,000 pfu per 10 cm Petri dish and duplicate filter lifts were made onto  
25 Colony/Plaque Screen membranes (NEN Dupont). The plaque lifts were probed with the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 cDNA (SEQ ID NO:1; see Example 1 of International application no. PCT/IB95/00452, filed June 8, 1995, published Dec. 21, 1995 as WO 95/34659)) labeled with 32P-dCTP by the random priming method (Life Technologies). Hybridization conditions were 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50°C. Wash  
30 conditions were 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50°C. (Church and Gilbert (1984)). Positively hybridizing

plaques were purified and in vivo excised into pBluescript plasmids. The sequence of the cDNA inserts was determined by the chain termination method using dideoxy terminators labeled with fluorescent dyes (Applied Biosystems, Inc.). The longest soybean cDNA obtained, designated "soybean protox-1", is full-length based on comparison with the other known plant protox peptide sequences (Table 1A). Soybean protox-1 is 1847-bp in length and encodes a protein of 58.8 kDa. The nucleotide sequence of this cDNA and the amino acid sequence it encodes are set forth in SEQ ID NOs:11 and 12, respectively. The soybean protein is 78% identical (87% similar) to the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 protein.

Soybean protox-1, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited December 15, 1995 as pWDC-12 (NRRL #B-21516).

### Example 3: Isolation of a Cotton Protox-1 cDNA Based on Sequence Homology to a Maize Protox-1 Coding Sequence

A Lambda Uni-Zap cDNA library prepared from *Gossypium hirsutum* L. (72 hr. dark grown cotyledons) was obtained from Dr. Dick Trelease, Dept. of Botany, Arizona State University (Ni W. and Trelease R.N., *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.* 289: 237-243 (1991)). Approximately 50,000 pfu of the library was plated at a density of approximately 5,000 pfu per 10 cm Petri dish and duplicate filter lifts were made onto Colony/Plaque Screen membranes (NEN Dupont). The plaque lifts were probed with the maize protox-1 cDNA (SEQ ID NO:5) labeled with <sup>32</sup>P-dCTP by the random priming method (Life Technologies). Hybridization conditions were 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C. Wash conditions were 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50° C. (Church and Gilbert (1984)). Positively hybridizing plaques were purified and in vivo excised into pBluescript plasmids. The sequence of the cDNA inserts was determined by the chain termination method using dideoxy terminators labeled with fluorescent dyes (Applied Biosystems, Inc.). The longest cotton cDNA obtained, designated "cotton protox-1", appears to be full-length based on comparison with the other known plant protox peptide sequences (Table 1A). Cotton protox-1 is 1826-bp in length and encodes a protein of 58.2 kDa. The nucleotide sequence of this cDNA and the amino acid



sequence it encodes are set forth in SEQ ID NOs:13 and 14, respectively. The cotton protein is 77% identical (86% similar) to the maize protox-1 protein.

Cotton protox-1, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited July 1, 1996 as pWDC-15 (NRRL #B-21594).

5

#### Example 4: Isolation of a Sugar Beet Protox-1 cDNA Based on Sequence Homology to an *Arabidopsis* Protox-1 Coding Sequence

A Lambda-Zap cDNA library prepared from *Beta vulgaris* was obtained from Dr. Philip Rea, Dept. of Botany, Plant Science Institute, Philadelphia, PA (Yongcheol Kim, Eugene J. Kim, and Philip A. Rea, *Plant Physiol.* 106: 375-382 (1994)). Approximately 50,000 pfu of the cDNA library were plated at a density of approximately 5,000 pfu per 10 cm Petri dish and duplicate filter lifts were made onto nitrocellulose membranes (Schleicher and Schuell). The plaque lifts were probed with the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 cDNA (SEQ ID NO:1) labeled with 32P-dCTP by the random priming method (Life Technologies). Hybridization conditions were 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C. Wash conditions were 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50° C. (Church and Gilbert (1984)). Positively hybridizing plaques were purified and in vivo excised into pBluescript plasmids. The sequences of the cDNA inserts were determined by the chain termination method using dideoxy terminators labeled with fluorescent dyes (Applied Biosystems, Inc.). The longest sugar beet protox-1 cDNA obtained, designated "sugar beet protox-1", is full-length based on comparison with the other known plant protox peptide sequences (Table 1A). Sugar beet protox-1 is 1910-bp in length and encodes a protein of 60 kDa. The nucleotide sequence of this cDNA and the amino acid sequence it encodes are set forth in SEQ ID NOs:15 and 16, respectively. The sugar beet protein is 73% identical (82% similar) to the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 protein.

Sugar beet protox-1, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited July 29, 1996, as pWDC-16 (NRRL #B-21595N).

Example 5: Isolation of an Oilseed Rape Protox-1 cDNA Based on Sequence Homology to an  
*Arabidopsis* Protox-1 Coding Sequence

A Lambda Uni-Zap II cDNA library prepared from *Brassica napus* (3-4 wk. mature green  
5 leaves) was obtained from Dr. Guenther Ochs, Institut Fuer Allgemeine Botanik, Johannes  
Gutenberg-Universitaet Mainz, Germany (Günther Ochs, Gerald Schock, and Aloysius Wild,  
*Plant Physiol.* 103: 303-304 (1993)). Approximately 50,000 pfu of the cDNA library were  
plated at a density of approximately 5,000 pfu per 10 cm Petri dish and duplicate filter lifts were  
made onto nitrocellulose membranes (Schleicher and Schuell). The plaque lifts were probed  
10 with the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 cDNA (SEQ ID NO:1) labeled with 32P-dCTP by the random  
priming method (Life Technologies). Hybridization conditions were 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate  
(SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C. Wash conditions were 2X SSC, 1% SDS at  
50° C. (Church and Gilbert (1984)). Positively hybridizing plaques were purified and in vivo  
excised into pBluescript plasmids. The sequences of the cDNA inserts were determined by the  
15 chain termination method using dideoxy terminators labeled with fluorescent dyes (Applied  
Biosystems, Inc.). The longest oilseed rape protox-1 cDNA obtained, designated "rape protox-  
1", is full-length based on comparison with the other known plant protox peptide sequences  
(Table 1A). Rape protox-1 is 1784-bp in length and encodes a protein of 57.3kD. The  
nucleotide sequence of this cDNA and the amino acid sequence it encodes are set forth in SEQ  
20 ID NOs: 17 and 18, respectively. The oilseed rape protein is 87% identical (92% similar) to the  
*Arabidopsis* protox-1 protein.

Rape protox-1, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited August 23, 1996, as pWDC-  
17 (NRRL #B-21615).

Example 6: Isolation of a Rice Protox-1 cDNA Based on Sequence Homology to a Maize  
Protox-1 Coding Sequence

A Lambda gt11 cDNA library prepared from *Oryza sativa* (5 day etiolated shoots) was  
purchased from Clontech. Approximately 50,000 pfu of the cDNA library were plated at a  
30 density of approximately 5,000 pfu per 10 cm Petri dish and duplicate filter lifts were made onto

nitrocellulose membranes (Schleicher and Schuell). The plaque lifts were probed with the maize protox-1 cDNA (SEQ ID NO:5) labeled with 32P-dCTP by the random priming method (Life Technologies). Hybridization conditions were 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C. Wash conditions were 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50° C. (Church and Gilbert (1984)). Positively hybridizing plaques were purified, and lambda DNA was prepared using the Wizard Lambda-Prep kit (Promega). The cDNA inserts were subcloned as *EcoRI* fragments into the pBluescript SK vector using standard techniques. The sequences of the cDNA inserts were determined by the chain termination method using dideoxy terminators labeled with fluorescent dyes (Applied Biosystems, Inc.). The longest rice protox-1 cDNA obtained, designated "rice protox-1", was 1224-bp in length. Rice protox-1 lacks coding sequence for the transit peptide plus approximately 172 amino acids of the mature coding sequence based on comparison with the other known plant protox peptide sequences (Table 1A). The nucleotide sequence of this partial cDNA and the amino acid sequence it encodes are set forth in SEQ ID NOs:19 and 20, respectively.

Rice protox-1, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited December 6, 1996, as pWDC-18 (NRRL #B-21648).

#### Example 7: Isolation of a Sorghum Protox-1 cDNA Based on Sequence Homology to a Maize Protox-1 Coding Sequence

A Lambda-Zap II cDNA library prepared from Sorghum bicolor (3-6 day green seedlings) was obtained from Dr. Klaus Pfizenmaier, Institute of Cell Biology and Immunology, University of Stuttgart, Germany (Harald Wajant, Karl-Wolfgang Mundry, and Klaus Pfizenmaier, *Plant Mol. Biol.* 26: 735-746 (1994)). Approximately 50,000 pfu of the cDNA library were plated at a density of approximately 5,000 pfu per 10 cm Petri dish and duplicate filter lifts were made onto nitrocellulose membranes (Schleicher and Schuell). The plaque lifts were probed with the maize protox-1 cDNA (SEQ ID NO:5) labeled with 32P-dCTP by the random priming method (Life Technologies). Hybridization conditions were 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M NaPO<sub>4</sub> pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at 50° C. Wash conditions were 2X SSC, 1% SDS at 50° C. (Church and Gilbert (1984)). Positively hybridizing plaques were purified and in vivo excised into pBluescript

plasmids. The sequences of the cDNA inserts were determined by the chain termination method using dideoxy terminators labeled with fluorescent dyes (Applied Biosystems, Inc.). The longest sorghum protox-1 cDNA obtained, designated "sorghum protox-1", was 1590-bp in length.

Sorghum protox-1 lacks coding sequence for the transit peptide plus approximately 44 amino acids of the mature coding sequence based on comparison with the other known plant protox peptide sequences (Table 1A). The nucleotide sequence of this partial cDNA and the amino acid sequence it encodes are set forth in SEQ ID NOs:21 and 22, respectively.

Sorghum protox-1, in the pBluescript SK vector, was deposited December 6, 1996, as pWDC-19 (NRRL #B-21649).

#### Example 8: Isolation of a Sugar Cane Protox-1 cDNA Based on Sequence Homology to a Maize Protox-1 Coding Sequence

A Lambda-Zap II cDNA library prepared from sugar cane was obtained from Henrik Albert of USDA/ARS at the Hawaii Agricultural Research Center. Approximately 50,000 pfu of the cDNA library were plated at a density of approximately 5,000 pfu per 10 cm Petri dish and duplicate filter lifts were made onto nitrocellulose membranes (Schleicher and Schuell). The plaque lifts were probed with the maize protox-1 cDNA (SEQ ID NO:5) labeled with  $^{32}\text{P}$ -dCTP by the random priming method (Life Technologies). Hybridization conditions were 7% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS), 0.5 M  $\text{NaPO}_4$  pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA at  $50^\circ\text{C}$ . Wash conditions were 2X SSC, 1% SDS at  $50^\circ\text{C}$ . (Church and Gilbert (1984)). Positively hybridizing plaques were purified and in vivo excised into pBluescript plasmids. The sequences of the cDNA inserts were determined by the chain termination method using dideoxy terminators labeled with fluorescent dyes (Applied Biosystems, Inc.). The longest sugar cane protox-1 cDNA obtained, designated "sugar cane protox-1", was 633-bp in length. Sugar cane protox-1 lacks coding sequence for the transit peptide plus approximately 382 amino acids of the mature coding sequence based on comparison with the other known plant protox peptide sequences (Table 1A). The nucleotide sequence of this partial cDNA and the amino acid sequence it encodes are set forth in SEQ ID NOs:36 and 37, respectively.

### Example 9: Demonstration of Plant Protox Clone Sensitivity to Protox Inhibitory Herbicides in a Bacterial System

Liquid cultures of protox-1/SASX38, protox-2/SASX38 and pBluescript/XL1-Blue were grown in L amp<sup>100</sup>. One hundred microliter aliquots of each culture were plated on L amp<sup>100</sup> media containing various concentrations (1.0nM-10mM) of a protox inhibitory aryluracil herbicide of formula XVII. Duplicate sets of plates were incubated for 18 hours at 37° C.

The protox<sup>+</sup> *E. coli* strain XL1-Blue showed no sensitivity to the herbicide at any concentration, consistent with reported resistance of the native bacterial enzyme to similar herbicides. The protox-1/SASX38 was clearly sensitive, with the lawn of bacteria almost entirely eliminated by inhibitor concentrations as low as 10nM. The protox-2/SASX38 was also sensitive, but only at a higher concentration (10μM) of the herbicide. The herbicide was effective even on plates maintained almost entirely in the dark. The toxicity of the herbicide was entirely eliminated by the addition of 20 μg/ml hematin to the plates.

The different herbicide tolerance between the two plant protox strains is likely the result of differential expression from these two plasmids, rather than any inherent difference in enzyme sensitivity. Protox-1/SASX38 grows much more slowly than protox-2/SASX38 in any heme-deficient media. In addition, the Mzprotox-2/SASX38 strain, with a growth rate comparable to Arab protox-1/SASX38, is also very sensitive to herbicide at the lower (10-100nM) concentrations.

### Section B: Identification and Characterization of Plant Protox Genes Resistant to Protox-Inhibitory Herbicides

#### Example 10: Selecting for Plant Protox Genes Resistant to Protox-Inhibitory Herbicides in the *E. coli* Expression System

An *Arabidopsis thaliana* (Landsberg) cDNA library in the plasmid vector pFL61 (Minet *et al.*, *Plant J.* 2:417-422 (1992) was obtained and amplified. The *E. coli hemG* mutant SASX38 (Sasarman *et al.*, *J. Gen. Microbiol.* 113:297(1979)) was obtained and maintained on L media

containing 20ug/ml hematin (United States Biochemicals). The plasmid library was transformed into SASX38 by electroporation using the Bio-Rad Gene Pulser and the manufacturer's conditions. The electroporated cells were plated on L agar containing 100ug/ml ampicillin at a density of approximately 500,000 transformants/10cm plate. The cells were then incubated at 37°C for 40 hours in low light and selected for the ability to grow without the addition of exogenous heme. Heme prototrophs were recovered at a frequency of 400/10<sup>7</sup> from the pFL61 library. Sequence analysis of twenty-two complementing clones showed that nine are of the type designated "protox-1," the protox gene expected to express a chloroplastic protox enzyme.

The pFL61 library is a yeast expression library, with the *Arabidopsis* cDNAs inserted bidirectionally. These cDNAs can also be expressed in bacteria. The protox cDNAs apparently initiate at an in-frame ATG in the yeast PGK 3' sequence approximately 10 amino acids 5' to the *NotI* cloning site in the vector and are expressed either from the *lacZ* promoter 300bp further upstream or from an undefined cryptic bacterial promoter. Because protox-1 cDNAs that included significant portions of a chloroplast transit sequence inhibited the growth of the *E. coli* SASX38 strain, the clone with the least amount of chloroplast transit sequence attached was chosen for mutagenesis/herbicide selection experiments. This clone, pSLV19, contains only 17 amino acids of the putative chloroplast transit peptide, with the DNA sequence beginning at bp-151 of the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 cDNA (SEQ ID NO:1).

The plasmid pSLV19 was transformed into the random mutagenesis strain XL1-Red (Stratagene, La Jolla, CA). The transformation was plated on L media containing 50ug/ml ampicillin and incubated for 48 hours at 37°C. Lawns of transformed cells were scraped from the plates and plasmid DNA prepared using the Wizard Megaprep kit (Promega, Madison, WI). Plasmid DNA isolated from this mutator strain is predicted to contain approximately one random base change per 2000 nucleotides (see Greener *et al.*, *Strategies* 7(2):32-34 (1994).

The mutated plasmid DNA was transformed into the *hemG* mutant SASX38 (Sasarman *et al.*, *J. Gen. Microbiol.* 113:297 (1979) and plated on L media containing various concentrations of protox-inhibiting herbicide (formula XVII). The plates were incubated for 2 days at 37°C. Plasmid DNA was isolated from all colonies that grew in the presence of herbicide concentrations that effectively killed the wild type strain. The isolated DNA was then transformed into SASX38 and plated again on herbicide to ensure that the resistance observed

was plasmid-borne. The protox coding sequence from plasmids passing this screen was excised by *NotI* digestion, recloned into an unmutagenized vector, and tested again for the ability to confer herbicide tolerance. The DNA sequence of protox cDNAs that conferred herbicide resistance was then determined and mutations identified by comparison with the wild type

5 *Arabidopsis* protox-1 sequence (SEQ ID NO:1).

A single coding sequence mutant was recovered from the first mutagenesis experiment. This mutant leads to enhanced herbicide "resistance" only by increasing growth rate. It contains a C to A mutation at nucleotide 197 in SEQ ID NO:1 in the truncated chloroplast transit sequence of pSLV19, converting an ACG codon for threonine to an AAG codon for lysine at  
10 amino acid 56 of SEQ ID NO:2, and resulting in better complementation of the bacterial mutant. This plasmid also contains a silent coding sequence mutation at nucleotide 1059, with AGT (Ser) changing to AGC (Ser). This plasmid was designated pMut-1.

The pMut-1 plasmid was then transformed into the mutator XL1-Red strain as described above and the mutated DNA was isolated and plated on an herbicide concentration that is lethal  
15 to the unmutagenized pMut-1 protox gene. Herbicide tolerant colonies were isolated after two days at 37°C and analyzed as described above. Multiple plasmids were shown to contain herbicide resistant protox coding sequences. Sequence analysis indicated that the resistant genes fell into two classes. One resistance mutation identified was a C to T change at nucleotide 689 in the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO:1. This change converts a GCT  
20 codon for alanine at amino acid 220 of SEQ ID NO:2 to a GTT codon for valine, and was designated pAraC-1Val (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 3).

A second class of herbicide resistant mutant contains an A to G change at nucleotide 1307 in the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 sequence. This change converts a TAC codon for tyrosine at amino acid 426 to a TGC codon for cysteine, and was designated pAraC-2Cys (*see*, Table 1B;  
25 sub-sequence 7).

A third resistant mutant has a G to A change at nucleotide 691 in the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 sequence. This mutation converts a GGT codon for glycine at amino acid 221 to an AGT codon for serine at the codon position adjacent to the mutation in pAraC-1. This plasmid was designated pAraC-3Ser (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 4).

Resistant mutant pAraC-2Cys, in the pMut-1 plasmid, was deposited on November 14, 1994 under the designation pWDC-7 with the Agricultural Research Culture Collection and given the deposit designation NRRL #21339N.

#### 5      Example 11: Additional Herbicide-Resistant Codon Substitutions at Positions Identified in the Random Screen

The amino acids identified as herbicide resistance sites in the random screen are replaced by other amino acids and tested for function and for herbicide tolerance in the bacterial system.

10      Oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis of the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 sequence is performed using the Transformer Site-Directed Mutagenesis Kit (Clontech, Palo Alto, CA). After amino acid changes are confirmed by sequence analysis, the mutated plasmids are transformed into SASX38 and plated on L-amp<sup>100</sup> media to test for function and on various concentrations of protox-inhibiting herbicide to test for tolerance.

15      This procedure is applied to the alanine codon at nucleotides 688-690 and to the tyrosine codon at nucleotides 1306-1308 of the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 sequence (SEQ ID NO:1). The results demonstrate that the alanine codon at nucleotides 688-690 can be changed to a codon for valine (pAraC-1Val), threonine (pAraC-1Thr), leucine (pAraC-1Leu), cysteine (pAraC-1Cys), or isoleucine (pAraC-1Ile) to yield an herbicide-resistant protox enzyme that retains function (*see*,  
20      Table 1B; sub-sequence 3). The results further demonstrate that the tyrosine codon at nucleotides 1306-1308 can be changed to a codon for cysteine (pAraC-2Cys), isoleucine (pAraC-2Ile), leucine (pAraC-2Leu), threonine (pAraC-2Thr), methionine (pAraC-2Met), valine (pAraC-2Val), or alanine (pAraC-2Ala) to yield an herbicide-resistant protox enzyme that retains function (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 7).

25

#### Example 12: Isolation of Additional Mutations that Increase Enzyme Function and/or Herbicide Tolerance of Previously Identified Resistant Mutants

Plasmids containing herbicide resistant protox genes are transformed into the mutator  
30      strain XL1-Red and mutated DNA is isolated as described above. The mutated plasmids are



transformed into SASX38 and the transformants are screened on herbicide concentrations (formula XVII) sufficient to inhibit growth of the original "resistant" mutant. Tolerant colonies are isolated and the higher tolerance phenotype is verified as being coding sequence dependent as described above. The sequence of these mutants is determined and mutations identified by comparison to the progenitor sequence.

This procedure was applied to the pAraC-1Val mutant described above. The results demonstrate that the serine codon at amino acid 305 (SEQ ID NO:2) can be changed to a codon for leucine to yield an enzyme with higher tolerance to protox-inhibiting herbicides than the pAraC-1Val mutant alone. This second site mutation is designated AraC305Leu (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 13). The same results are demonstrated for the threonine codon at amino acid 249, where a change to either isoleucine or to alanine leads to a more tolerant enzyme (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 12). These changes are designated AraC249Ile and AraC249Ala, respectively.

The procedure was also applied to the pAraC-2Cys mutant described above. The results demonstrate that the proline codon at amino acid 118 (SEQ ID NO:2) can be changed to a codon for leucine to yield an enzyme with higher tolerance to protox-inhibiting herbicides than the pAraC-1Cys mutant alone. This mutation is designated AraC118Leu (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 11). The same results are demonstrated for the serine codon at amino acid 305, where a change to leucine leads to a more tolerant pAraC-2Cys enzyme (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 13). This change was also isolated with the pAraC-1Val mutant as described above and is designated AraC305Leu. Additional mutations that enhance the herbicide resistance of the pAraC-2Cys mutant include an asparagine to serine change at amino acid 425, designated AraC425Ser (Table 1B; sub-sequence 14), and a tyrosine to cysteine at amino acid 498, designated AraC498Cys (Table 1B; sub-sequence 15).

These changes (Table 1B; sub-sequences 11-15) are referred to as "second site" mutations, because they are not sufficient to confer herbicide tolerance alone, but rather enhance the function and/or the herbicide tolerance of an already mutant enzyme. This does not preclude the possibility that other amino acid substitutions at these sites could suffice to produce an herbicide tolerant enzyme since exhaustive testing of all possible replacements has not been performed.

Example 13: Combining Identified Resistance Mutations with Identified Second Site Mutations  
to Create Highly Functional/Highly Tolerant Protox Enzymes

The AraC305Leu mutation described above was found to enhance the function/herbicide resistance of both the AraC-1Val and the AraC-2Cys mutant plasmids. In an effort to test the general usefulness of this second site mutation, it was combined with the AraC-2Leu, AraC-2Val, and AraC-2Ile mutations and tested for herbicide tolerance. In each case, the AraC305Leu change significantly increased the growth rate of the resistant protox mutant on protox-inhibiting herbicide. Combinations of the AraC-2Ile resistant mutant with either the second site mutant AraC249Ile or AraC118Leu also produced more highly tolerant mutant protox enzymes. The AraC249Ile mutation demonstrates that a second site mutation identified as enhancing an AraC-1 (sub-sequence 3) mutant may also increase the resistance of an AraC-2 (sub-sequence 7) mutant. A three mutation plasmid containing AraC-2Ile, AraC305Leu, and AraC249Ile (Table 1B; sub-sequences 7, 13, and 12) has also been shown to produce a highly functional, highly herbicide tolerant protox-1 enzyme.

Example 14: Identification of Sites in the Maize Protox-1 Gene that Can Be Mutated to Give  
Herbicide Tolerance

The pMut-1 *Arabidopsis* protox -1 plasmid described above is very effective when used in mutagenesis/screening experiments in that it gives a high frequency of genuine coding sequence mutants, as opposed to the frequent up-promoter mutants that are isolated when other plasmids are used. In an effort to create an efficient plasmid screening system for maize protox-1, the maize cDNA was engineered into the pMut-1 vector in approximately the same sequence context as the *Arabidopsis* cDNA. Using standard methods of overlapping PCR fusion, the 5' end of the pMut-1 *Arabidopsis* clone (including 17 amino acids of chloroplast transit peptide with one mis-sense mutation as described above) was fused to the maize protox-1 cDNA sequence starting at amino acid number 14 of the maize sequence (SEQ ID NO:6). The 3' end of the maize cDNA was unchanged. *NotI* restriction sites were placed on both ends of this fusion, and the chimeric gene was cloned into the pFL61 plasmid backbone from pMut-1. Sequence

analysis revealed a single nucleotide PCR-derived silent mutation that converts the ACG codon at nucleotides 745-747 (SEQ ID NO:5) to an ACT codon, both of which encode threonine. This chimeric Arab-maize protox-1 plasmid was designated pMut-3.

The pMut-3 plasmid was transformed into the mutator XL1-Red strain as described above and the mutated DNA was isolated and plated on a herbicide concentration (formula XVII) that was lethal to the unmutagenized pMut-3 maize protox gene. Herbicide tolerant colonies were isolated after two days at 37°C and analyzed as described above. This analysis revealed multiple plasmids containing herbicide resistant protox coding sequences. Sequence analysis showed 5 single base changes that individually result in an herbicide tolerant maize protox-1 enzyme.

Three of these mutations correspond to amino acid changes previously shown to confer tolerance at the homologous position in the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 gene. Two of the three are pMzC-1Val and pMzC-1Thr, converting the alanine (GCT) at amino acid 164 (SEQ ID NO:6) to either valine (GAT) or to threonine (ACT). This position corresponds to the pAraC-1 mutations described above (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 3). The third analogous change, pMzC-3Ser, converts the glycine (GGT) at amino acid 165 to Serine (AGT), corresponding to the AraC-3Ser mutation described above (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 4). These results serve to validate the expectation that herbicide-tolerant mutations identified in one plant protox gene may also confer herbicide tolerance in an equivalent plant protox gene from another species.

Two of the mutations isolated from the maize protox-1 screen result in amino acid changes at residues not previously identified as herbicide resistance sites. One change (Mz159Phe) converts cysteine (TGC) to phenylalanine (TTC) at amino acid 159 of the maize protox-1 sequence (SEQ ID NO:6) (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 2). The second (Mz419Thr) converts isoleucine (ATA) to threonine (ACA) at amino acid 419 (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 9).

Additional amino acid substitutions were made and tested at three of the maize mutant sites. Tolerance was demonstrated when glycine 165 was changed to leucine (pMzC-3Leu) or when cysteine 159 was changed to either leucine (Mz159Leu) or to lysine (Mz159Lys) (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequences 4 and 2). Tolerant enzymes were also created by changing isoleucine 419 to histidine (Mz419His), glycine (Mz419Gly), or asparagine (Mz419Asn) (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 9).

Individual amino acid changes that produced highly herbicide tolerant *Arabidopsis* protox-1 enzymes were engineered into the maize protox-1 gene by site-directed mutagenesis as described above. Bacterial testing demonstrated that changing the alanine (GCT) at amino acid 164 (SEQ ID NO:6) to leucine (CTT) produced a highly tolerant maize enzyme (pMzC-1Leu) (see, Table 1B; sub-sequence 3). No mutation analogous to the AraC-2 site (Table 1B; sub-sequence 7) in *Arabidopsis* was isolated in the maize random screen. However, changing this site, tyrosine 370 in the maize enzyme (SEQ ID NO:6), to either isoleucine (pMzC-2Ile) or methionine (pMzC-2Met) did produce herbicide tolerant enzymes (see, Table 1B; sub-sequence 7).

Additional mutant screens performed as described earlier in this example, except using formulas XXIIIa and XXIIIb instead of XVII, identified three additional amino acid changes that confer tolerant protox enzymes. One, using formula XXIIIb, demonstrated that changing the arginine (CGT) at amino acid 88 (SEQ ID NO:6) to cysteine (TGT) produced a highly tolerant maize enzyme (Mz88Cys) (see, Table 1B; sub-sequence 1). Another, using formula XXIIIa, demonstrated that changing both the leucine (TTA) at amino acid 347 (SEQ ID NO:6) to serine (TCA) and the alanine (GCA) at amino acid 453 (SEQ ID NO:6) to threonine (ACA) produced a highly tolerant maize enzyme (Mz347Ser453Thr) (see, Table 1B; sub-sequences 16 and 17). Unlike the second site mutations described above, which increase enzyme function and/or herbicide tolerance of previously identified resistant mutants, Mz347Ser453Thr is a “double mutant” that requires that both mutations be present for herbicide tolerance.

#### Example 15: Identification of Sites in the Wheat Protox-1 Gene that can be Mutated to Give Herbicide Tolerance

To create an efficient plasmid screening system for wheat protox-1, the wheat cDNA was engineered into the pMut-1 vector as described above for the maize cDNA. This chimeric Arab-wheat protox-1 plasmid is designated pMut-4. The pMut-4 DNA was mutated and screened for herbicide tolerance as described above. This analysis revealed multiple plasmids containing herbicide resistant protox coding sequences. Sequence analysis showed 7 single base changes that individually result in an herbicide tolerant wheat protox-1 enzyme. Four of these mutations

correspond to amino acid changes previously shown to confer tolerance at the homologous position in the *Arabidopsis* and/or in the maize protox-1 gene. Two, pWhtC-1Val and pWhtC-1Thr, convert the alanine (GCT) at amino acid 211 (SEQ ID NO:10) to valine (GAT) and to threonine (ACT), respectively. This position corresponds to the pAraC-1 mutations described above (see, Table 1B; sub-sequence 3). The third analogous change, pWhtC-3Ser, converts the glycine (GGT) at amino acid 212 to serine (AGT), corresponding to the AraC-3Ser mutation described above (see, Table 1B; sub-sequence 4). The fourth, Wht466Thr, converts isoleucine (ATA) to threonine (ACA) at amino acid 466, corresponding to the Mz419Thr mutant from maize (see, Table 1B; sub-sequence 9).

Three of the mutations isolated from the wheat protox-1 screen result in amino acid changes at residues not previously identified as herbicide resistance sites. One change (Wht356Leu) converts valine (GTT) to leucine (CTT) at amino acid 356 of the wheat protox-1 sequence (SEQ ID NO:10) (see, Table 1B; sub-sequence 6). A second (Wht421Pro) converts serine (TCT) to proline (CCT) at amino acid 421 (see, Table 1B; sub-sequence 8). The third (Wht502Ala) converts valine (GTT) to alanine (GCT) at amino acid 502 (see, Table 1B; sub-sequence 10).

#### Example 16: Identification of Sites in the Soybean Protox-1 Gene that can be Mutated to Give Herbicide Tolerance

To create an efficient plasmid screening system for soybean protox-1, the soybean cDNA was engineered into the pMut-1 vector as described above for the maize cDNA. This chimeric Arab-soybean protox-1 plasmid is designated pMut-5. The pMut-5 DNA was mutated and screened for herbicide tolerance as described above. This analysis revealed multiple plasmids containing herbicide resistant protox coding sequences. Sequence analysis showed 4 single base changes that individually result in an herbicide tolerant soybean protox-1 enzyme. Two of these mutations correspond to amino acid changes previously shown to confer tolerance at the homologous position in the *Arabidopsis* and/or in the wheat protox-1 gene. One, pSoyC-1Thr, converts the alanine (GCA) at amino acid 226 (SEQ ID NO:12) to threonine (ACA). This position corresponds to the pAraC-1Thr mutation described above (see, Table 1B; sub-sequence

3). The second analogous change, Soy517Ala, converts the valine (GTT) at amino acid 517 to alanine (GCT), corresponding to the Wht502Ala mutation from wheat (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 10).

Two of the mutations isolated from the soybean protox-1 screen result in amino acid changes at a residue not previously identified as an herbicide resistance site. One change (Soy369Ser) converts proline (CCT) to serine (TCT) at amino acid 369 of the soybean protox-1 sequence (SEQ ID NO:12) (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 5). A second (Soy369His) converts this same proline369 to histidine (CAT) (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 5).

Individual amino acid changes that produced highly herbicide tolerant *Arabidopsis* protox-1 enzymes were engineered into the soybean protox-1 gene by site directed mutagenesis as described above. Bacterial testing demonstrated that changing the alanine (GCA) at amino acid 226 (SEQ ID NO:12) to leucine (pSoyC-1Leu) produced a tolerant soybean enzyme (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 3). Changing the tyrosine (TAC) at amino acid 432 (SEQ ID NO:12) to either leucine (pSoyC-2Leu) or isoleucine (pSoyC-2Ile) also produced herbicide tolerant enzymes (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 7).

#### Example 17: Identification of Sites in the Sugar Beet Protox-1 Gene that can be Mutated to Give Herbicide Tolerance

To create an efficient plasmid screening system for sugar beet protox-1, the sugar beet cDNA was engineered into the pMut-1 vector as described above for the maize cDNA. This chimeric Arab-sugar beet protox-1 plasmid is designated pMut-6. The pMut-6 DNA was mutated and screened for herbicide tolerance as described above. This analysis revealed multiple plasmids containing herbicide resistant protox coding sequences. Sequence analysis showed a single base change that results in an herbicide tolerant sugar beet protox-1 enzyme. This change (pSugC-2Cys) converts tyrosine (TAC) at amino acid 449 to cysteine (TGC) and is analogous to the AraC-2 mutations in *Arabidopsis* (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 7).

Individual amino acid changes that produced highly herbicide tolerant *Arabidopsis* protox-1 enzymes were engineered into the sugar beet protox-1 gene by site directed mutagenesis as described above. Bacterial testing demonstrated that changing the tyrosine (TAC) at amino

acid 449 to leucine (pSugC-2Leu), isoleucine (pSugC-2Ile), valine (pSugC-2Val), or methionine (pSugC-2Met) produced herbicide tolerant sugar beet enzymes (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 7).

#### Example 18: Identification of Sites in the Cotton Protox-1 Gene that can be Mutated to Give Herbicide Tolerance

In an effort to create an efficient plasmid screening system for cotton protox-1, the cotton cDNA was engineered into the pMut-1 vector as described above for the maize cDNA. This chimeric Arab-cotton protox-1 plasmid is designated pMut-7. The pMut-7 DNA was mutated and screened for herbicide tolerance as described above. This analysis revealed multiple plasmids containing herbicide resistant protox coding sequences. Sequence analysis showed 3 single base changes that individually result in an herbicide tolerant cotton protox-1 enzyme. Two mutants, pCotC-2Cys and pCotC-2Arg, change tyrosine (TAC) at amino acid 428 (SEQ ID NO:16) to cysteine (TGC) and to arginine (CGC), respectively (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 7). Arginine is a novel substitution giving tolerance at this previously identified AraC-2 (sub-sequence 7) site. The third mutation (Cot365Ser) converts proline (CCC) to serine (TCC) at amino acid 365. This change corresponds to the soybean mutant Soy369Ser (*see*, Table 1B; sub-sequence 5).

#### Example 19: Demonstration of Resistant Mutations' Cross-Tolerance to Various Protox-Inhibiting Compounds

Resistant mutant plasmids, originally identified based on resistance against a single protox inhibitory herbicide, were tested against a spectrum of other protox inhibiting compounds. For this test, the SASX38 strain containing the wild-type plasmid is plated on a range of concentrations of each compound to determine the lethal concentration for each one. Resistant mutant plasmids in SASX38 are plated and scored for the ability to survive on a concentration of each compound at least 10 fold higher than the concentration that is lethal to the SASX38 strain containing the wild-type plasmid.

Results from bacterial cross-tolerance testing, illustrated in Tables 3A and 3B, show that each of the mutations identified confers tolerance to a variety of protox inhibiting compounds.

### Section C: Expression of Herbicide-Resistant Prottox Genes in Transgenic Plants

5

#### Example 20: Engineering of Plants Tolerant to Prottox-Inhibiting Herbicides by Homologous Recombination or Gene Conversion

Because the described mutant coding sequences effectively confer herbicide tolerance  
 10 when expressed under the control of the native prottox promoter, targeted changes to the prottox coding sequence in its native chromosomal location represent an alternative means for generating herbicide tolerant plants and plant cells. A fragment of prottox DNA containing the desired mutations, but lacking its own expression signals (either promoter or 3' untranslated region) can be introduced by any of several art-recognized methods (for instance, *Agrobacterium*  
 15 transformation, direct gene transfer to protoplasts, microprojectile bombardment), and herbicide-tolerant transformants selected. The introduced DNA fragment also contains a diagnostic restriction enzyme site or other sequence polymorphism that is introduced by site-directed mutagenesis in vitro without changing the encoded amino acid sequence (i.e. a silent mutation). As has been previously reported for various selectable marker and herbicide tolerance genes (see,  
 20 e.g., Paszkowski *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 7: 4021-4026 (1988); Lee *et al.*, *Plant Cell* 2: 415-425 (1990); Risseuw *et al.*, *Plant J.* 7: 109-119 (1995)). some transformants are found to result from homologous integration of the mutant DNA into the prottox chromosomal locus, or from conversion of the native prottox chromosomal sequence to the introduced mutant sequence. These transformants are recognized by the combination of their herbicide-tolerant phenotype, and  
 25 the presence of the diagnostic restriction enzyme site in their prottox chromosomal locus.

#### Example 21: Construction of Plant Transformation Vectors

Numerous transformation vectors are available for plant transformation, and the genes of  
 30 this invention can be used in conjunction with any such vectors. The selection of vector for use



will depend upon the preferred transformation technique and the target species for transformation. For certain target species, different antibiotic or herbicide selection markers may be preferred. Selection markers used routinely in transformation include the *nptII* gene, which confers resistance to kanamycin and related antibiotics (Messing & Vierra, *Gene* 19: 259-268 (1982); Bevan *et al.*, *Nature* 304:184-187 (1983)), the *bar* gene, which confers resistance to the herbicide phosphinothricin (White *et al.*, *Nucl Acids Res* 18: 1062 (1990), Spencer *et al.* *Theor Appl Genet* 79: 625-631(1990)), the *hph* gene, which confers resistance to the antibiotic hygromycin (Blochinger & Diggelmann, *Mol Cell Biol* 4: 2929-2931), and the *dhfr* gene, which confers resistance to methotrexate (Bourouis *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 2(7): 1099-1104 (1983)).

#### I. Construction of Vectors Suitable for *Agrobacterium* Transformation

Many vectors are available for transformation using *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*. These typically carry at least one T-DNA border sequence and include vectors such as pBIN19 (Bevan, *Nucl. Acids Res.* (1984)) and pXYZ. Below the construction of two typical vectors is described.

Construction of pCIB200 and pCIB2001: The binary vectors pCIB200 and pCIB2001 are used for the construction of recombinant vectors for use with *Agrobacterium* and was constructed in the following manner. pTJS75kan was created by *NarI* digestion of pTJS75 (Schmidhauser & Helinski, *J Bacteriol.* 164: 446-455 (1985)) allowing excision of the tetracycline-resistance gene, followed by insertion of an *AccI* fragment from pUC4K carrying an NPTII (Messing & Vierra, *Gene* 19: 259-268 (1982); Bevan *et al.*, *Nature* 304: 184-187 (1983); McBride *et al.*, *Plant Molecular Biology* 14: 266-276 (1990)). *XhoI* linkers were ligated to the *EcoRV* fragment of pCIB7, which contains the left and right T-DNA borders, a plant selectable *nos/nptII* chimeric gene and the pUC polylinker (Rothstein *et al.*, *Gene* 53: 153-161 (1987)), and the *XhoI*-digested fragment was cloned into *Sall*-digested pTJS75kan to create pCIB200 (see also EP 0 332 104, example 19). pCIB200 contains the following unique polylinker restriction sites: *EcoRI*, *SstI*, *KpnI*, *BglII*, *XbaI*, and *Sall*. pCIB2001 is a derivative of pCIB200, which is created by the insertion into the polylinker of additional restriction sites. Unique restriction sites in the polylinker of pCIB2001 are *EcoRI*, *SstI*, *KpnI*, *BglII*, *XbaI*, *Sall*, *MluI*, *BclI*, *AvrII*, *ApaI*, *HpaI*, and *StuI*. pCIB2001, in addition to containing these unique restriction sites also has plant and bacterial kanamycin selection, left and right T-DNA borders for *Agrobacterium*-mediated

transformation, the RK2-derived *trfA* function for mobilization between *E. coli* and other hosts, and the *OriT* and *OriV* functions also from RK2. The pCIB2001 polylinker is suitable for the cloning of plant expression cassettes containing their own regulatory signals.

Construction of pCIB10 and Hygromycin Selection Derivatives Thereof: The binary  
 5 vector pCIB10 contains a gene encoding kanamycin resistance for selection in plants, T-DNA right and left border sequences and incorporates sequences from the wide host-range plasmid pRK252 allowing it to replicate in both *E. coli* and *Agrobacterium*. Its construction is described by Rothstein *et al.*, *Gene* 53: 153-161 (1987). Various derivatives of pCIB10 have been  
 10 constructed that incorporate the gene for hygromycin B phosphotransferase described by Gritz *et al.*, *Gene* 25: 179-188 (1983)). These derivatives enable selection of transgenic plant cells on hygromycin only (pCIB743), or hygromycin and kanamycin (pCIB715, pCIB717).

## II. Construction of Vectors Suitable for non-*Agrobacterium* Transformation.

Transformation without the use of *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* circumvents the  
 15 requirement for T-DNA sequences in the chosen transformation vector and consequently vectors lacking these sequences can be utilized in addition to vectors such as the ones described above that contain T-DNA sequences. Transformation techniques that do not rely on *Agrobacterium* include transformation via particle bombardment, protoplast uptake (*e.g.* PEG and electroporation) and microinjection. The choice of vector depends largely on the preferred  
 20 selection for the species being transformed. Below, the construction of some typical vectors is described.

Construction of pCIB3064: pCIB3064 is a pUC-derived vector suitable for direct gene transfer techniques in combination with selection by the herbicide basta (or phosphinothricin). The plasmid pCIB246 comprises the CaMV 35S promoter in operational fusion to the *E. coli*  
 25 GUS gene and the CaMV 35S transcriptional terminator and is described in the PCT published application WO 93/07278. The 35S promoter of this vector contains two ATG sequences 5' of the start site. These sites were mutated using standard PCR techniques in such a way as to remove the ATG's and generate the restriction sites *SspI* and *PvuII*. The new restriction sites were 96 and 37-bp away from the unique *Sall* site and 101 and 42-bp away from the actual start  
 30 site. The resultant derivative of pCIB246 was designated pCIB3025. The GUS gene was then

excised from pCIB3025 by digestion with *Sall* and *SacI*, the termini rendered blunt and religated to generate plasmid pCIB3060. The plasmid pJIT82 was obtained from the John Innes Centre, Norwich and the a 400-bp *SmaI* fragment containing the *bar* gene from *Streptomyces viridochromogenes* was excised and inserted into the *HpaI* site of pCIB3060 (Thompson *et al.* EMBO J 6: 2519-2523 (1987)). This generated pCIB3064, which comprises the *bar* gene under the control of the CaMV 35S promoter and terminator for herbicide selection, a gene for ampicillin resistance (for selection in *E. coli*) and a polylinker with the unique sites *SphI*, *PstI*, *HindIII*, and *BamHI*. This vector is suitable for the cloning of plant expression cassettes containing their own regulatory signals.

Construction of pSOG19 and pSOG35: pSOG35 is a transformation vector that utilizes the *E. coli* gene dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR) as a selectable marker conferring resistance to methotrexate. PCR was used to amplify the 35S promoter (~800-bp), intron 6 from the maize *Adh1* gene (~550-bp) and 18-bp of the GUS untranslated leader sequence from pSOG10. A 250-bp fragment encoding the *E. coli* dihydrofolate reductase type II gene was also amplified by PCR and these two PCR fragments were assembled with a *SacI-PstI* fragment from pBI221 (Clontech), which comprised the pUC19 vector backbone and the nopaline synthase terminator. Assembly of these fragments generated pSOG19, which contains the 35S promoter in fusion with the intron 6 sequence, the GUS leader, the DHFR gene and the nopaline synthase terminator. Replacement of the GUS leader in pSOG19 with the leader sequence from Maize Chlorotic Mottle Virus (MCMV) generated the vector pSOG35. pSOG19 and pSOG35 carry the pUC gene for ampicillin resistance and have *HindIII*, *SphI*, *PstI* and *EcoRI* sites available for the cloning of foreign sequences.

#### Example 22: Construction of Plant Expression Cassettes

Gene sequences intended for expression in transgenic plants are firstly assembled in expression cassettes behind a suitable promoter and upstream of a suitable transcription terminator. These expression cassettes can then be easily transferred to the plant transformation vectors described above in Example 21.

## I. Promoter Selection

The selection of a promoter used in expression cassettes will determine the spatial and temporal expression pattern of the transgene in the transgenic plant. Selected promoters will express transgenes in specific cell types (such as leaf epidermal cells, mesophyll cells, root cortex  
 5 cells) or in specific tissues or organs (roots, leaves or flowers, for example) and this selection will reflect the desired location of expression of the transgene. Alternatively, the selected promoter may drive expression of the gene under a light-induced or other temporally regulated promoter. A further alternative is that the selected promoter be chemically regulated. This would provide the possibility of inducing expression of the transgene only when desired and  
 10 caused by treatment with a chemical inducer.

## II. Transcriptional Terminators

A variety of transcriptional terminators are available for use in expression cassettes. These are responsible for the termination of transcription beyond the transgene and its correct  
 15 polyadenylation. Appropriate transcriptional terminators are those that are known to function in plants and include the CaMV 35S terminator, the *tml* terminator, the nopaline synthase terminator, the pea *rbcS* E9 terminator, as well as terminators naturally associated with the plant protox gene (i.e. "protox terminators"). These can be used in both monocotyledons and  
 20 dicotyledons.

## III. Sequences for the Enhancement or Regulation of Expression

Numerous sequences have been found to enhance gene expression from within the transcriptional unit and these sequences can be used in conjunction with the genes of this invention to increase their expression in transgenic plants.

25 Various intron sequences have been shown to enhance expression, particularly in monocotyledonous cells. For example, the introns of the maize *Adh1* gene have been found to significantly enhance the expression of the wild-type gene under its cognate promoter when introduced into maize cells. Intron 1 was found to be particularly effective and enhanced expression in fusion constructs with the chloramphenicol acetyltransferase gene (Callis *et al.*,  
 30 *Genes Develop.* 1: 1183-1200 (1987)). In the same experimental system, the intron from the

maize *bronzel* gene had a similar effect in enhancing expression (Callis *et al.*, *supra*). Intron sequences have been routinely incorporated into plant transformation vectors, typically within the non-translated leader.

A number of non-translated leader sequences derived from viruses are also known to enhance expression, and these are particularly effective in dicotyledonous cells. Specifically, leader sequences from Tobacco Mosaic Virus (TMV, the "W-sequence"), Maize Chlorotic Mottle Virus (MCMV), and Alfalfa Mosaic Virus (AMV) have been shown to be effective in enhancing expression (*e.g.* Gallie *et al. Nucl. Acids Res.* 15: 8693-8711 (1987); Skuzeski *et al. Plant Molec. Biol.* 15: 65-79 (1990))

#### IV. Targeting of the Gene Product Within the Cell

Various mechanisms for targeting gene products are known to exist in plants and the sequences controlling the functioning of these mechanisms have been characterized in some detail. For example, the targeting of gene products to the chloroplast is controlled by a signal sequence that is found at the amino terminal end of various proteins and that is cleaved during chloroplast import yielding the mature protein (*e.g.* Comai *et al. J. Biol. Chem.* 263: 15104-15109 (1988)). These signal sequences can be fused to heterologous gene products to effect the import of heterologous products into the chloroplast (van den Broeck *et al. Nature* 313: 358-363 (1985)). DNA encoding for appropriate signal sequences can be isolated from the 5' end of the cDNAs encoding the RUBISCO protein, the CAB protein, the EPSP synthase enzyme, the GS2 protein and many other proteins that are known to be chloroplast localized.

Other gene products are localized to other organelles such as the mitochondrion and the peroxisome (*e.g.* Unger *et al. Plant Molec. Biol.* 13: 411-418 (1989)). The cDNAs encoding these products can also be manipulated to effect the targeting of heterologous gene products to these organelles. Examples of such sequences are the nuclear-encoded ATPases and specific aspartate amino transferase isoforms for mitochondria. Targeting to cellular protein bodies has been described by Rogers *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82: 6512-6516 (1985)).

In addition, sequences have been characterized that cause the targeting of gene products to other cell compartments. Amino terminal sequences are responsible for targeting to the ER, the apoplast, and extracellular secretion from aleurone cells (Koehler & Ho, *Plant Cell* 2: 769-

783 (1990)). Additionally, amino terminal sequences in conjunction with carboxy terminal sequences are responsible for vacuolar targeting of gene products (Shinshi *et al.*, *Plant Molec. Biol.* 14: 357-368 (1990)).

By the fusion of the appropriate targeting sequences described above to transgene sequences of interest it is possible to direct the transgene product to any organelle or cell compartment. For chloroplast targeting, for example, the chloroplast signal sequence from the RUBISCO gene, the CAB gene, the EPSP synthase gene, or the GS2 gene is fused in frame to the amino terminal ATG of the transgene. The signal sequence selected should include the known cleavage site and the fusion constructed should take into account any amino acids after the cleavage site that are required for cleavage. In some cases this requirement may be fulfilled by the addition of a small number of amino acids between the cleavage site and the transgene ATG or alternatively replacement of some amino acids within the transgene sequence. Fusions constructed for chloroplast import can be tested for efficacy of chloroplast uptake by *in vitro* translation of *in vitro* transcribed constructions followed by *in vitro* chloroplast uptake using techniques described by (Bartlett *et al.* In: Edelmann *et al.* (Eds.) *Methods in Chloroplast Molecular Biology*, Elsevier, pp. 1081-1091 (1982); Wasmann *et al.* *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 205: 446-453 (1986)). These construction techniques are well known in the art and are equally applicable to mitochondria and peroxisomes. The choice of targeting that may be required for expression of the transgenes will depend on the cellular localization of the precursor required as the starting point for a given pathway. This will usually be cytosolic or chloroplastic, although it may in some cases be mitochondrial or peroxisomal. The products of transgene expression will not normally require targeting to the ER, the apoplast or the vacuole.

The above described mechanisms for cellular targeting can be utilized not only in conjunction with their cognate promoters, but also in conjunction with heterologous promoters so as to effect a specific cell targeting goal under the transcriptional regulation of a promoter that has an expression pattern different to that of the promoter from which the targeting signal derives.

### Example 23: Transformation of Dicotyledons

Transformation techniques for dicotyledons are well known in the art and include *Agrobacterium*-based techniques and techniques that do not require *Agrobacterium*. Non-  
 5 *Agrobacterium* techniques involve the uptake of exogenous genetic material directly by protoplasts or cells. This can be accomplished by PEG or electroporation mediated uptake, particle bombardment-mediated delivery, or microinjection. Examples of these techniques are described by Paszkowski *et al.*, *EMBO J* 3: 2717-2722 (1984), Potrykus *et al.*, *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 199: 169-177 (1985), Reich *et al.*, *Biotechnology* 4: 1001-1004 (1986), and Klein *et al.*, *Nature*  
 10 327: 70-73 (1987). In each case the transformed cells are regenerated to whole plants using standard techniques known in the art.

*Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation is a preferred technique for transformation of dicotyledons because of its high efficiency of transformation and its broad utility with many different species. The many crop species that are routinely transformable by *Agrobacterium*  
 15 include tobacco, tomato, sunflower, cotton, oilseed rape, potato, soybean, alfalfa and poplar (EP 0 317 511 (cotton), EP 0 249 432 (tomato, to Calgene), WO 87/07299 (*Brassica*, to Calgene), US 4,795,855 (poplar)).

Transformation of the target plant species by recombinant *Agrobacterium* usually involves co-cultivation of the *Agrobacterium* with explants from the plant and follows protocols  
 20 well known in the art. Transformed tissue is regenerated on selectable medium carrying the antibiotic or herbicide resistance marker present between the binary plasmid T-DNA borders.

### Example 24: Transformation of Monocotyledons

Transformation of most monocotyledon species has now also become routine. Preferred techniques include direct gene transfer into protoplasts using PEG or electroporation techniques, and particle bombardment into callus tissue. Transformations can be undertaken with a single  
 25 DNA species or multiple DNA species (*i.e.* co-transformation) and both these techniques are suitable for use with this invention. Co-transformation may have the advantage of avoiding  
 30 complex vector construction and of generating transgenic plants with unlinked loci for the gene

of interest and the selectable marker, enabling the removal of the selectable marker in subsequent generations, should this be regarded desirable. However, a disadvantage of the use of co-transformation is the less than 100% frequency with which separate DNA species are integrated into the genome (Schocher *et al.* *Biotechnology* 4: 1093-1096 (1986)).

5 Patent Applications EP 0 292 435 (to Ciba-Geigy), EP 0 392 225 (to Ciba-Geigy) and WO 93/07278 (to Ciba-Geigy) describe techniques for the preparation of callus and protoplasts from an elite inbred line of maize, transformation of protoplasts using PEG or electroporation, and the regeneration of maize plants from transformed protoplasts. Gordon-Kamm *et al.*, *Plant Cell* 2: 603-618 (1990)) and Fromm *et al.*, *Biotechnology* 8: 833-839 (1990)) have published  
10 techniques for transformation of A188-derived maize line using particle bombardment. Furthermore, application WO 93/07278 (to Ciba-Geigy) and Koziel *et al.*, *Biotechnology* 11: 194-200 (1993)) describe techniques for the transformation of elite inbred lines of maize by particle bombardment. This technique utilizes immature maize embryos of 1.5-2.5 mm length excised from a maize ear 14-15 days after pollination and a PDS-1000He Biolistics device for  
15 bombardment.

Transformation of rice can also be undertaken by direct gene transfer techniques utilizing protoplasts or particle bombardment. Protoplast-mediated transformation has been described for *Japonica*-types and *Indica*-types (Zhang *et al.*, *Plant Cell Rep* 7: 379-384 (1988); Shimamoto *et al.* *Nature* 338: 274-277 (1989); Datta *et al.* *Biotechnology* 8: 736-740 (1990)). Both types are  
20 also routinely transformable using particle bombardment (Christou *et al.* *Biotechnology* 9: 957-962 (1991)).

Patent Application EP 0 332 581 (to Ciba-Geigy) describes techniques for the generation, transformation and regeneration of Pooideae protoplasts. These techniques allow the transformation of *Dactylis* and wheat. Furthermore, wheat transformation was been described by  
25 Vasil *et al.*, *Biotechnology* 10: 667-674 (1992)) using particle bombardment into cells of type C long-term regenerable callus, and also by Vasil *et al.*, *Biotechnology* 11: 1553-1558 (1993)) and Weeks *et al.*, *Plant Physiol.* 102: 1077-1084 (1993) using particle bombardment of immature embryos and immature embryo-derived callus. A preferred technique for wheat transformation, however, involves the transformation of wheat by particle bombardment of immature embryos  
30 and includes either a high sucrose or a high maltose step prior to gene delivery. Prior to



bombardment, any number of embryos (0.75-1 mm in length) are plated onto MS medium with 3% sucrose (Murashige & Skoog, *Physiologia Plantarum* 15: 473-497 (1962)) and 3 mg/l 2,4-D for induction of somatic embryos, which is allowed to proceed in the dark. On the chosen day of bombardment, embryos are removed from the induction medium and placed onto the osmoticum (i.e. induction medium with sucrose or maltose added at the desired concentration, typically 15%). The embryos are allowed to plasmolyze for 2-3 h and are then bombarded. Twenty embryos per target plate is typical, although not critical. An appropriate gene-carrying plasmid (such as pCIB3064 or pSG35) is precipitated onto micrometer size gold particles using standard procedures. Each plate of embryos is shot with the DuPont Biolistics' helium device using a burst pressure of ~1000 psi using a standard 80 mesh screen. After bombardment, the embryos are placed back into the dark to recover for about 24 h (still on osmoticum). After 24 hrs, the embryos are removed from the osmoticum and placed back onto induction medium where they stay for about a month before regeneration. Approximately one month later the embryo explants with developing embryogenic callus are transferred to regeneration medium (MS + 1 mg/liter NAA, 5 mg/liter GA), further containing the appropriate selection agent (10 mg/l basta in the case of pCIB3064 and 2 mg/l methotrexate in the case of pSOG35). After approximately one month, developed shoots are transferred to larger sterile containers known as "GA7s" that contained half-strength MS, 2% sucrose, and the same concentration of selection agent. Patent application WO 94/13822 describes methods for wheat transformation and is hereby incorporated by reference.

#### Example 25: Isolation of the *Arabidopsis thaliana* Protox-1 Promoter Sequence

A Lambda Zap II genomic DNA library prepared from *Arabidopsis thaliana* (Columbia, whole plant) was purchased from Stratagene. Approximately 125,000 phage were plated at a density of 25,000 pfu per 15 cm Petri dish and duplicate lifts were made onto Colony/Plaque Screen membranes (NEN Dupont). The plaque lifts were probed with the *Arabidopsis* protox-1 cDNA (SEQ ID NO:1 labeled with 32P-dCTP by the random priming method (Life Technologies). Hybridization and wash conditions were at 65°C as described in Church and Gilbert, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 81: 1991-1995 (1984). Positively hybridizing plaques were

purified and in vivo excised into pBluescript plasmids. Sequence from the genomic DNA inserts was determined by the chain termination method using dideoxy terminators labeled with fluorescent dyes (Applied Biosystems, Inc.). One clone, AraPT1Pro, was determined to contain 580-bp of *Arabidopsis* sequence upstream from the initiating methionine (ATG) of the protox-1 protein coding sequence. This clone also contains coding sequence and introns that extend to-bp 1241 of the protox-1 cDNA sequence. The 580-bp 5' noncoding fragment is the putative *Arabidopsis* protox-1 promoter, and the sequence is set forth in SEQ ID NO:13.

AraPT1Pro was deposited December 15, 1995, as pWDC-11 (NRRL #B-21515)

#### Example 26: Construction of Plant Transformation Vectors Expressing Altered Protox-1 Genes Behind the Native *Arabidopsis* Protox-1 Promoter

A full-length cDNA of the appropriate altered *Arabidopsis* protox-1 cDNA was isolated as an *EcoRI-XhoI* partial digest fragment and cloned into the plant expression vector pCGN1761ENX (see Example 9 of International application no. PCT/IB95/00452 filed June 8, 1995, published Dec. 21, 1995 as WO 95/34659). This plasmid was digested with *NcoI* and *BamHI* to produce a fragment comprised of the complete protox-1 cDNA plus a transcription terminator from the 3' untranslated sequence of the *tml* gene of *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*. The AraPT1Pro plasmid described above was digested with *NcoI* and *BamHI* to produce a fragment comprised of pBluescript and the 580-bp putative *Arabidopsis* protox-1 promoter. Ligation of these two fragments produced a fusion of the altered protox cDNA to the native protox promoter. The expression cassette containing the protox-1 promoter/protox-1 cDNA/*tml* terminator fusion was excised by digestion with *KpnI* and cloned into the binary vector pCIB200. The binary plasmid was transformed by electroporation into *Agrobacterium* and then into *Arabidopsis* using the vacuum infiltration method (Bechtold *et al.*, *C.R. Acad. Sci. Paris* 316: 1194-1199 (1993). Transformants expressing altered protox genes were selected on kanamycin or on various concentrations of protox inhibiting herbicide.

Example 27: Production of Herbicide Tolerant Plants by Expression of a Native Protox-1  
Promoter/Altered Protox-1 Fusion

Using the procedure described above, an *Arabidopsis* protox-1 cDNA containing a TAC  
to ATG (Tyrosine to Methionine) change at nucleotides 1306-1308 in the protox-1 sequence  
(SEQ ID NO:1) was fused to the native protox-1 promoter fragment and transformed into  
*Arabidopsis thaliana*. This altered protox-1 enzyme (AraC-2Met) has been shown to be >10-fold  
more tolerant to various protox-inhibiting herbicides than the naturally occurring enzyme when  
tested in the previously described bacterial expression system. Seed from the vacuum infiltrated  
plants was collected and plated on a range (10.0nM-1.0uM) of a protox inhibitory aryluracil  
herbicide of formula XVII. Multiple experiments with wild type *Arabidopsis* have shown that a  
10.0nM concentration of this compound is sufficient to prevent normal seedling germination.  
Transgenic seeds expressing the AraC-2Met altered enzyme fused to the native protox-1  
promoter produced normal *Arabidopsis* seedlings at herbicide concentrations up to 500nM,  
indicating at least 50-fold higher herbicide tolerance when compared to wild-type *Arabidopsis*.  
This promoter/alterd protox enzyme fusion therefore functions as an effective selectable marker  
for plant transformation. Several of the plants that germinated on 100.0nM of protox-inhibiting  
herbicide were transplanted to soil, grown 2-3 weeks, and tested in a spray assay with various  
concentrations of the protox-inhibiting herbicide. When compared to empty vector control  
transformants, the AraPT1Pro/AraC-2Met transgenics were >10-fold more tolerant to the  
herbicide spray.

EXAMPLE 28: Demonstration of resistant mutations' cross-tolerance to various protox-  
inhibiting compounds in an *Arabidopsis* germination assay.

Using the procedure described above, an *Arabidopsis* protox-1 cDNA containing both a  
TAC to ATC (tyrosine to isoleucine) change at nucleotides 1306-1308 and a TCA to TTA (serine  
to leucine) change at nucleotides 945-947 in the protox-1 sequence (SEQ ID NO:1) was fused to  
the native protox-1 promoter fragment and transformed into *Arabidopsis thaliana*. This altered  
protox-1 enzyme (AraC-2Ile + AraC305Leu) has been shown to be >10-fold more tolerant to a

protox inhibitory aryluracil herbicide of formula XVII than the naturally occurring enzyme when tested in a bacterial system (see Examples 9-13). Homozygous *Arabidopsis* lines containing this fusion were generated from transformants that showed high tolerance to a protox inhibiting herbicide in a seedling germination assay as described above. The seed from one line was tested  
 5 for cross-tolerance to various protox-inhibitory compounds by repeating the germination assay on concentrations of the compounds that had been shown to inhibit germination of wild-type *Arabidopsis*. The results from these experiments are shown in Table 4.

#### Example 29: Isolation of a Maize Protox-1 Promoter Sequence

10 A Zea Mays (Missouri 17 inbred, etiolated seedlings) genomic DNA library in the Lambda FIX II vector was purchased from Stratagene. Approximately 250,000 pfu of the library was plated at a density of 50,000 phage per 15 cm plate and duplicate lifts were made onto Colony/Plaque screen membranes (NEN Dupont). The plaque lifts were probed with the maize  
 15 protox-1 cDNA (SEQ ID NO:5) labeled with <sup>32</sup>P-dCTP by the random priming method (Life Technologies). Hybridization and wash conditions were at 65°C as described in Church and Gilbert, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 81: 1991-1995 (1984). Lambda phage DNA was isolated from three positively hybridizing phage using the Wizard Lambda Preps DNA Purification System (Promega). Analysis by restriction digest, hybridization patterns, and DNA sequence  
 20 analysis identified a lambda clone containing approximately 3.5 kb of maize genomic DNA located 5' to the maize protox-1 coding sequence previously isolated as a cDNA clone. This fragment includes the maize protox-1 promoter. The sequence of this fragment is set forth in SEQ ID NO:14. From nucleotide 1 to 3532, this sequence is comprised of 5' noncoding sequence. From nucleotide 3533 to 3848, this sequence encodes the 5' end of the maize protox-1  
 25 protein.

A plasmid containing the sequence of SEQ ID NO:14 fused to the remainder of the maize protox-1 coding sequence was deposited March 19, 1996 as pWDC-14 (NRRL #B-21546).

### Example 30: Construction of Plant Transformation Vectors Expressing Altered Protox-1 Genes Behind the Native Maize Protox-1 Promoter

The 3848-bp maize genomic fragment (SEQ ID NO:14) was excised from the isolated  
 5 lambda phage clone as a *Sall*-*KpnI* partial digest product and ligated to a *KpnI*-*NotI* fragment derived from an altered maize protox-1 cDNA that contained an alanine to leucine change at amino acid 164 (SEQ ID NO:6). This created a fusion of the native maize protox-1 promoter to a full length cDNA that had been shown to confer herbicide tolerance in a bacterial system (Examples 9-14). This fusion was cloned into a pUC18 derived vector containing the CaMV  
 10 35S terminator sequence to create a protox promoter/altered protox cDNA/terminator cassette. The plasmid containing this cassette was designated pWCo-1.

A second construct for maize transformation was created by engineering the first intron found in the coding sequence from the maize genomic clone back into the maize cDNA. The insertion was made using standard overlapping PCR fusion techniques. The intron (SEQ ID  
 15 NO:25) was 93-bp long and was inserted between nucleotides 203 and 204 of SEQ ID NO:6, exactly as it appeared in natural context in the lambda clone described in Example 29. This intron-containing version of the expression cassette was designated pWCo-2.

### Example 31: Demonstration of Maize Protox-1 Promoter Activity in Transgenic Maize Plants

Maize plants transformed with maize protox promoter/altered protox fusions were identified using PCR analysis with primers specific for the transgene. Total RNA was prepared from the PCR positive plants and reverse-transcribed using Superscript M-MLV (Life  
 25 Technologies) under recommended conditions. Two microliters of the reverse transcription reaction was used in a PCR reaction designed to be specific for the altered protox sequence. While untransformed controls give no product in this reaction, approximately 85% of plants transformed with pWCo-1 gave a positive result, indicating the presence of mRNA derived from the transgene. This demonstrates some level of activity for the maize protox promoter. The RNA's from the transgenic maize plants were also subjected to standard northern blot analysis  
 30 using the radiolabeled maize protox cDNA fragment from SEQ ID NO:6 as a probe. Protox-1

mRNA levels significantly above those of untransformed controls were detected in some of the transgenic maize plants. This elevated mRNA level is presumed to be due to expression of altered protox-1 mRNA from the cloned maize protox promoter.

#### Example 32: Isolation of a Sugar Beet Protox-1 Promoter Sequence

A genomic sugar beet library was prepared by Stratagene in the Lambda Fix II vector. Approximately 300,000 pfu of the library was plated and probed with the sugar beet protox-1 cDNA sequence (SEQ ID NO:17) as described for maize in Example 29. Analysis by restriction digest, hybridization patterns and DNA sequence analysis identified a lambda clone containing approximately 7 kb of sugar beet genomic DNA located 5' to the sugar beet coding sequence previously isolated as a cDNA clone. A *PstI-SalI* fragment of 2606-bp was subcloned from the lambda clone into a pBluescript vector. This fragment contains 2068-bp of 5' noncoding sequence and includes the sugar beet protox-1 promoter sequence. It also includes the first 453-bp of the protox-1 coding sequence and the 85-bp first intron contained in the coding sequence. The sequence of this fragment is set forth in SEQ ID NO:26.

A plasmid containing the sequence of SEQ ID NO:26 was deposited December 6, 1996 as pWDC-20 (NRRL #B-21650).

#### Example 33: Construction of Plant Transformation Vectors Expressing Altered Sugar Beet Protox-1 Genes Behind the Native Sugar Beet Protox-1 Promoter

The sugar beet genomic fragment (SEQ ID NO:26) was excised from the genomic subclone described in Example 32 as a *SacI-BsrGI* fragment that includes 2068-bp of 5' noncoding sequence and the first 300-bp of the sugar beet protox-1 coding sequence. This fragment was ligated to a *BsrGI-NotI* fragment derived from an altered sugar beet protox-1 cDNA that contained a tyrosine to methionine change at amino acid 449 (SEQ ID NO:18). This created a fusion of the native sugar beet protox-1 promoter to a full length cDNA that had been shown to confer herbicide tolerance in a bacterial system (Examples 9-14). This fusion was cloned into a pUC18 derived vector containing the CaMV 35S terminator sequence to create a

protox promoter/altered protox cDNA/terminator cassette. The plasmid containing this cassette was designated pWCo-3.

#### Example 34: Production of Herbicide Tolerant Plants by Expression of a Native Sugar Beet Protox-1 Promoter/Altered Sugar Beet Protox-1 Fusion

The expression cassette from pWCo-3 is transformed into sugar beet using any of the transformation methods applicable to dicot plants, including *Agrobacterium*, protoplast, and biolistic transformation techniques. Transgenic sugar beets expressing the altered protox-1 enzyme are identified by RNA-PCR and tested for tolerance to protox-inhibiting herbicides at concentrations that are lethal to untransformed sugar beets.

#### Section D: Expression of Protox Genes in Plant Plastids

#### Example 35: Preparation of a Chimeric Gene Containing the Tobacco Plastid *clpP* Gene Promoter and Native *clpP* 5' Untranslated Sequence Fused to a GUS Reporter Gene and Plastid *rps16* Gene 3' Untranslated Sequence in a Plastid Transformation Vector

##### I. Amplification of the Tobacco Plastid *clpP* Gene Promoter and Complete 5' Untranslated RNA (5' UTR).

Total DNA from *N. tabacum* c.v. "Xanthi NC" was used as the template for PCR with a left-to-right "top strand" primer comprising an introduced *EcoRI* restriction site at position -197 relative to the ATG start codon of the constitutively expressed plastid *clpP* gene (primer Pclp\_P1a: 5'-GCGGAATTCATACTTATTTATCATTAGAAAG-3' (SEQ ID NO:27); *EcoRI* restriction site underlined) and a right-to-left "bottom strand" primer homologous to the region from -21 to -1 relative to the ATG start codon of the *clpP* promoter that incorporates an introduced *NcoI* restriction site at the start of translation (primer Pclp\_P2b: 5'-GCGCCATGGTAAATGAAAGAAAGAACTAAA-3' (SEQ ID NO:28); *NcoI* restriction site underlined). This PCR reaction was undertaken with *Pfu* thermostable DNA polymerase (Stratagene, La Jolla CA) in a Perkin Elmer Thermal Cycler 480 according to the manufacturer's

recommendations (Perkin Elmer/Roche, Branchburg, NJ) as follows: 7 min 95°C, followed by 4 cycles of 1 min 95°C / 2 min 43°C / 1 min 72°C, then 25 cycles of 1 min 95°C / 2 min 55°C / 1 min 72°C. The 213-bp amplification product comprising the promoter and 5' untranslated region of the *clpP* gene containing an *EcoRI* site at its left end and an *NcoI* site at its right end and  
 5 corresponding to nucleotides 74700 to 74505 of the *N. tabacum* plastid DNA sequence (Shinozaki *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 5: 2043–2049 (1986)) was gel purified using standard procedures and digested with *EcoRI* and *NcoI* (all restriction enzymes were purchased from New England Biolabs, Beverly, MA).

## 10 II. Amplification of the Tobacco Plastid *rps16* Gene 3' Untranslated RNA Sequence (3'UTR).

Total DNA from *N. tabacum* c.v. "Xanthi NC" was used as the template for PCR as described above with a left-to-right "top strand" primer comprising an introduced *XbaI* restriction site immediately following the TAA stop codon of the plastid *rps16* gene encoding ribosomal  
 15 protein S16 (primer *rps16P\_1a* (5'-GCGTCTAGATCAACCGAAATTCAATTAAGG-3' (SEQ ID NO:30); *XbaI* restriction site underlined) and a right-to-left "bottom strand" primer homologous to the region from +134 to +151 relative to the TAA stop codon of *rps16* that incorporates an introduced *HindIII* restriction site at the 3' end of the *rps16* 3' UTR (primer  
 20 *rps16P\_1b* (5'-CGCAAGCTTCAATGGAAGCAATGATAA-3' (SEQ ID NO:31); *HindIII* restriction site underlined). The 169-bp amplification product comprising the 3' untranslated region of the *rps16* gene containing an *XbaI* site at its left end and a *HindIII* site at its right end and containing the region corresponding to nucleotides 4943 to 5093 of the *N. tabacum* plastid DNA sequence (Shinozaki *et al.*, 1986) was gel purified and digested with *XbaI* and *HindIII*.

## 25 III. Ligation of a GUS Reporter Gene Fragment to the *clpP* Gene Promoter and 5' and 3' UTR's.

An 1864-bp  $\beta$ -glucuronidase (GUS) reporter gene fragment derived from plasmid pRAJ275 (Clontech) containing an *NcoI* restriction site at the ATG start codon and an *XbaI* site following the native 3' UTR was produced by digestion with *NcoI* and *XbaI*. This fragment was  
 30 ligated in a four-way reaction to the 201-bp *EcoRI/NcoI clpP* promoter fragment, the 157-bp



*XbaI/HindIII rps16* 3'UTR fragment, and a 3148-bp *EcoRI/HindIII* fragment from cloning vector pGEM3Zf(-) (Promega, Madison WI) to construct plasmid pPH138. Plastid transformation vector pPH140 was constructed by digesting plasmid pPRV111a (Zoubenko *et al.* 1994) with *EcoRI* and *HindIII* and ligating the resulting 7287-bp fragment to a 2222-bp *EcoRI/HindIII* fragment of pPH138.

Example 36: Preparation of a Chimeric Gene Containing the Tobacco Plastid *clpP* Gene Promoter Plus Tobacco Plastid *psbA* Gene Minimal 5' Untranslated Sequence Fused to a GUS Reporter Gene and Plastid *rps16* Gene 3' Untranslated Sequence in a Plastid Transformation Vector

Amplification of the tobacco plastid *clpP* gene promoter and truncated 5' untranslated RNA (5' UTR): Total DNA from *N. tabacum* c.v. "Xanthi NC" was used as the template for PCR as described above with the left-to-right "top strand" primer Pclp\_P1a (SEQ ID NO:27) and a right-to-left "bottom strand" primer homologous to the region from -34 to -11 relative to the ATG start codon of the *clpP* promoter that incorporates an introduced *XbaI* restriction site in the *clpP* 5' UTR at position -11 (primer Pclp\_P1b: 5'-  
GCGTCTAGAAAGAACTAAATACTATATTTTCAC-3' (SEQ ID NO:29); *XbaI* restriction site underlined). The 202-bp amplification product comprising the promoter and truncated 5' UTR of the *clpP* gene containing an *EcoRI* site at its left end and an *XbaI* site at its right end was gel purified and digested with *XbaI*. The *XbaI* site was subsequently filled in with Klenow DNA polymerase (New England Biolabs) and the fragment digested with *EcoRI*. This was ligated in a five-way reaction to a double stranded DNA fragment corresponding to the final 38 nucleotides and ATG start codon of the tobacco plastid *psbA* gene 5' UTR (with an *NcoI* restriction site overhang introduced into the ATG start codon) that was created by annealing the synthetic oligonucleotides minpsb\_U (top strand: 5'-  
GGGAGTCCCTGATGATTAAATAAACCAAGATTTTAC-3' (SEQ ID NO:32)) and minpsb\_L (bottom strand: 5'-  
CATGGTAAAATCTTGGTTTATTTAATCATCAGGGACTCCC-3' (SEQ ID NO:33); *NcoI* restriction site 5' overhang underlined), the *NcoI/XbaI* GUS reporter gene fragment described above, the *XbaI/HindIII rps16* 3'UTR fragment described above, and the *EcoRI/HindIII*

pGEM3Zf(-) fragment described above to construct plasmid pPH139. Plastid transformation vector pPH144 was constructed by digesting plasmid pPRV111a (Zoubenko, *et al.*, *Nucleic Acids Res* 22: 3819-3824 (1994)) with *EcoRI* and *HindIII* and ligating the resulting 7287-bp fragment to a 2251-bp *EcoRI/HindIII* fragment of pPH139.

5

Example 37: Preparation of a Chimeric Gene Containing the Tobacco Plastid *clpP* Gene Promoter and Complete 5' Untranslated Sequence Fused to the *Arabidopsis thaliana* Protox-1 Coding Sequence and Plastid *rps16* Gene 3' Untranslated Sequence in a Vector for Tobacco Plastid Transformation

10

Miniprep DNA from plasmid AraC-2Met carrying an *Arabidopsis thaliana* *NotI* insert that includes cDNA sequences from the Protoporphyrinogen IX Oxidase ("protox") gene encoding a portion of the amino terminal plastid transit peptide, the full-length cDNA and a portion of the 3' untranslated region was used as the template for PCR as described above using a left-to-right "top strand" primer (with homology to nucleotides +172 to +194 relative to the ATG start codon of the full length precursor protein) comprising an introduced *NcoI* restriction site and new ATG start codon at the deduced start of the mature protox protein coding sequence (primer APRTXP1a: 5'-GGGACCATGGATTGTGTGATTGTCGGCGGAGG-3' (SEQ ID NO:34); *NcoI* restriction site underlined) and a right-to-left "bottom strand" primer homologous to nucleotides +917 to +940 relative to the native ATG start codon of the protox precursor protein (primer APRTXP1b: 5'-CTCCGCTCTCCAGCTTAGTGATAC-3' (SEQ ID NO:35)). The 778-bp product was digested with *NcoI* and *SfuI* and the resulting 682-bp fragment ligated to an 844-bp *SfuI/NotI* DNA fragment of AraC-2Met comprising the 3' portion of the protox coding sequence and a 2978-bp *NcoI/NotI* fragment of the cloning vector pGEM5Zf(+) (Promega, Madison WI) to construct plasmid pPH141. Plastid transformation vector pPH143 containing the *clpP* promoter driving the Formula XVII-resistant AraC-2Met protox gene with the *rps16* 3' UTR was constructed by digesting pPH141 with *NcoI* and *SspI* and isolating the 1491-bp fragment containing the complete protox coding sequence, digesting the *rps16P\_1a* and *rps16P\_1b* PCR product described above with *HindIII*, and ligating these to a 7436-bp *NcoI/HindIII* fragment of pPH140.

30

Example 38: Preparation of a Chimeric Gene Containing the Tobacco Plastid *clpP* Gene Promoter Plus Tobacco Plastid *psbA* Gene Minimal 5' Untranslated Sequence Fused to the *Arabidopsis thaliana* Protox-1 Coding Sequence and Plastid *rps16* Gene 3' Untranslated Sequence in a Vector for Tobacco Plastid Transformation

Plastid transformation vector pPH145 containing the *clpP* promoter/*psbA* 5' UTR fusion driving the Formula XVII-resistant AraC-2Met protox gene with the *rps16* 3' UTR was constructed by digesting pPH141 with *NcoI* and *SspI* and isolating the 1491-bp fragment containing the complete protox coding sequence, digesting the *rps16P\_1a* and *rps16P\_1b* PCR product described above with *HindIII*, and ligating these to a 7465-bp *NcoI/HindIII* fragment of pPH144.

Example 39: Preparation of a Chimeric Gene Containing the Tobacco Plastid *clpP* Gene Promoter and 5' Untranslated Sequence Fused to the EPSP Synthase Coding Sequence and Plastid *rps16* Gene 3' Untranslated Sequence in a Vector for Tobacco Plastid Transformation

A cDNA library is screened for the 5-enolpyruvyl-3-phosphoshikimate synthase (EPSP synthase) gene (U.S. Patent Nos. 5,310,667, 5,312,910, and 5,633,435, all incorporated herein by reference). A plasmid clone containing the full length EPSP synthase gene cDNA is isolated by standard techniques of molecular cloning. PCR primers are designed for amplification of the mature-size EPSP synthase coding sequence from this plasmid using a top strand primer having a 5' extension containing an *NcoI* restriction site inserted at amino acid -1 from the deduced mature protein start, thus creating an ATG start codon at this position, and a bottom strand primer having a 5' extension containing an *XbaI* restriction site downstream of the stop codon of the EPSP mature coding sequence in the amplified PCR product. The PCR amplification is performed using the designated primers and plasmid DNA template according to standard protocols. Amplified products are cloned and sequenced and a *NcoI-XbaI* DNA fragment containing the complete mature EPSP synthase coding sequence is isolated by restriction digest

with *NcoI* and *XbaI*, electrophoresis on a 0.8% TAE agarose gel, and phenol extraction of the excised band.

A plastid transformation vector containing the *clpP* promoter directing transcription of the mature-sized EPSP synthase gene with the *rps16* 3' UTR is constructed by digesting pPH140 with *NcoI* and *XbaI* and purifying the fragment containing the vector backbone, 5' and 3' plastid integration targeting sequences, *aadA* selectable marker cassette, and *clpP* promoter / *rps16* 3' UTR expression sequences. This product is ligated in a two-way reaction with the *NcoI-XbaI* DNA fragment containing the mature-sized EPSP synthase coding sequence isolated as described above.

#### Example 40: Preparation of a Chimeric Gene Containing the Tobacco Plastid *clpP* Gene Promoter and 5' Untranslated Sequence Fused to the ALS Coding Sequence and Plastid *rps16* Gene 3' Untranslated Sequence in a Vector for Tobacco Plastid Transformation

A cDNA library is screened for the acetolactate synthase (ALS) gene (U.S. Patent No. 5,013,659). A plasmid clone containing the full length ALS gene cDNA is isolated by standard techniques of molecular cloning. PCR primers are designed for amplification of the mature-size ALS coding sequence from this plasmid using a top strand primer having a 5' extension containing an *NcoI* restriction site inserted at amino acid -1 from the deduced mature protein start, thus creating an ATG start codon at this position, and a bottom strand primer having a 5' extension containing an *XbaI* restriction site downstream of the stop codon of the ALS mature coding sequence in the amplified PCR product. The PCR amplification is performed using the designated primers and plasmid DNA template according to standard protocols. Amplified products are cloned and sequenced and a *NcoI-XbaI* DNA fragment containing the complete mature ALS coding sequence is isolated by restriction digest with *NcoI* and *XbaI*, electrophoresis on a 0.8% TAE agarose gel, and phenol extraction of the excised band.

A plastid transformation vector containing the *clpP* promoter driving the mature-sized ALS gene with the *rps16* 3' UTR is constructed by digesting pPH140 with *NcoI* and *XbaI* and purifying the fragment containing the vector backbone, 5' and 3' plastid integration targeting sequences, *aadA* selectable marker cassette, and *clpP* promoter / *rps16* 3' UTR expression

sequences. This product is ligated in a two-way reaction with the *NcoI-XbaI* DNA fragment containing the mature-sized ALS coding sequence isolated as described above.

Example 41: Preparation of a Chimeric Gene Containing the Tobacco Plastid *clpP* Gene

5 Promoter and 5' Untranslated Sequence Fused to the AHAS Coding Sequence and Plastid *rps16* Gene 3' Untranslated Sequence in a Vector for Tobacco Plastid Transformation

A cDNA library is screened for the acetohydroxyacid synthase (AHAS) gene (U.S. Patent No. 4,761,373). A plasmid clone containing the full length AHAS gene cDNA is isolated by  
10 standard techniques of molecular cloning. PCR primers are designed for amplification of the mature-size AHAS coding sequence from this plasmid using a top strand primer having a 5' extension containing an *NcoI* restriction site inserted at amino acid -1 from the deduced mature protein start, thus creating an ATG start codon at this position, and a bottom strand primer having a 5' extension containing an *XbaI* restriction site downstream of the stop codon of the AHAS  
15 mature coding sequence in the amplified PCR product. The PCR amplification is performed using the designated primers and plasmid DNA template according to standard protocols. Amplified products are cloned and sequenced and a *NcoI-XbaI* DNA fragment containing the complete mature AHAS coding sequence is isolated by restriction digest with *NcoI* and *XbaI*, electrophoresis on a 0.8% TAE agarose gel, and phenol extraction of the excised band.

20 A plastid transformation vector containing the *clpP* promoter driving the mature-sized AHAS gene with the *rps16* 3' UTR is constructed by digesting pPH140 with *NcoI* and *XbaI* and purifying the fragment containing the vector backbone, 5' and 3' plastid integration targeting sequences, *aadA* selectable marker cassette, and *clpP* promoter / *rps16* 3' UTR expression sequences. This product is ligated in a two-way reaction with the *NcoI-XbaI* DNA fragment  
25 containing the mature-sized AHAS coding sequence isolated as described above.

Example 42: Preparation of a Chimeric Gene Containing the Tobacco Plastid *clpP* Gene Promoter and 5' Untranslated Sequence Fused to the ACCase Coding Sequence and Plastid *rps16* Gene 3' Untranslated Sequence in a Vector for Tobacco Plastid Transformation

A cDNA library is screened for the acetylcoenzyme A carboxylase (ACCase) gene (U.S. Patent No. 5,162,602). A plasmid clone containing the full length ACCase gene cDNA is isolated by standard techniques of molecular cloning. PCR primers are designed for amplification of the mature-size ACCase coding sequence from this plasmid using a top strand primer having a 5' extension containing an *NcoI* restriction site inserted at amino acid -1 from the deduced mature protein start, thus creating an ATG start codon at this position, and a bottom strand primer having a 5' extension containing an *XbaI* restriction site downstream of the stop codon of the ACCase mature coding sequence in the amplified PCR product. The PCR amplification is performed using the designated primers and plasmid DNA template according to standard protocols. Amplified products are cloned and sequenced and a *NcoI-XbaI* DNA fragment containing the complete mature ACCase coding sequence is isolated by restriction digest with *NcoI* and *XbaI*, electrophoresis on a 0.8% TAE agarose gel, and phenol extraction of the excised band.

A plastid transformation vector containing the *clpP* promoter driving the mature-sized ACCase gene with the *rps16* 3' UTR is constructed by digesting pPH140 with *NcoI* and *XbaI* and purifying the fragment containing the vector backbone, 5' and 3' plastid integration targeting sequences, *aadA* selectable marker cassette, and *clpP* promoter / *rps16* 3' UTR expression sequences. This product is ligated in a two-way reaction with the *NcoI-XbaI* DNA fragment containing the mature-sized ACCase coding sequence isolated as described above.

Example 43: Biolistic Transformation of the Tobacco Plastid Genome

Seeds of *Nicotiana tabacum* c.v. 'Xanthi nc' were germinated seven per plate in a 1" circular array on T agar medium and bombarded 12-14 days after sowing with 1  $\mu$ m tungsten particles (M10, Biorad, Hercules, CA) coated with DNA from plasmids pPH143 and pPH145 essentially as described in Svab, Z. and Maliga, P. (1993) *PNAS* 90, 913-917. Bombarded

seedlings were incubated on T medium for two days after which leaves were excised and placed abaxial side up in bright light (350-500  $\mu\text{mol photons/m}^2/\text{s}$ ) on plates of RMOP medium (Svab, Z., Hajdukiewicz, P. and Maliga, P. (1990) *PNAS* 87, 8526-8530) containing 500  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  spectinomycin dihydrochloride (Sigma, St. Louis, MO). Resistant shoots appearing underneath the bleached leaves three to eight weeks after bombardment were subcloned onto the same selective medium, allowed to form callus, and secondary shoots isolated and subcloned. Complete segregation of transformed plastid genome copies (homoplasmy) in independent subclones was assessed by standard techniques of Southern blotting (Sambrook *et al.*, (1989) *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor). *Bam*HI/*Eco*RI-digested total cellular DNA (Mettler, I. J. (1987) *Plant Mol Biol Reporter* 5, 346-349) was separated on 1% Tris-borate (TBE) agarose gels, transferred to nylon membranes (Amersham) and probed with  $^{32}\text{P}$ -labeled random primed DNA sequences corresponding to a 0.7 kb *Bam*HI/*Hind*III DNA fragment from pC8 containing a portion of the *rps7/12* plastid targeting sequence. Homoplasmic shoots are rooted aseptically on spectinomycin-containing MS/IBA medium (McBride, K. E. *et al.* (1994) *PNAS* 91, 7301-7305) and transferred to the greenhouse.

#### Example 44: Assessment of Herbicide Tolerance in Nt\_pPH143 and Nt\_pPH145 Plastid Transformant Lines

Primary homoplasmic transformant lines transformed with pPH143 (line Nt\_pPH143) or with pPH145 (line Nt\_pPH145), which were obtained as described in Example 43, were grown to maturity in the greenhouse. Flowers were either: (a) self-pollinated, (b) pollinated with wildtype tobacco (c.v. Xanthi nc), or (c) used as pollen donors to fertilize emasculated flowers of wildtype Xanthi plants. Plastid segregation of the linked spectinomycin resistance marker was verified by uniparental female inheritance of the spectinomycin-resistance phenotype in each transformant line using a minimum of 50 seeds per selection pool derived from either selfed or backcross capsules. Additional self or wildtype backcross (Xanthi pollen parent) seeds were germinated in soil. 36 plants of each line (143 1B-1, 143 1B-4, 143 4A-2, 143 4A-5, 145 7A-5, 145 7A-6, 145 8A-3) plus 36 wildtype Xanthi plants as isogenic controls were grown in separate

6" clay pots in a controlled environment cubicle. In order to assess tolerance to the protox inhibitor Formula XVII, plants of Xanthi and the seven transformant lines were distributed into eight identical 16-pot flats (2 plants of each type per flat). The flats were sprayed with Formula XVII until runoff at concentrations of either 0, 0.5, 2.5, 5, 10, 25, 50, or 100 mg Formula XVII per liter. Solutions were made up in water using 4 g/liter or 40 g/liter stock solutions of Formula XVII dissolved in dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and used immediately after preparation. Twenty microliters of the wetting agent Silwett was added to each 200 ml volume of herbicide solution for a final concentration of 0.01%. Flats were sprayed in the late afternoon and allowed to dry overnight before transfer to the growth cubicle. Tolerance was assessed by comparing leaf damage and wilting to the untransformed Xanthi controls at 0, 18 hrs, 48 hrs, and 6 days post-application. Severe damage was apparent on the Xanthi plants at all concentrations above 0.5 mg/l, and complete wilting/burn down occurred above 2.5 mg/l. Only slight damage occurred on the Nt\_pPH143 plants even at the highest concentration (100 mg/liter), and the plants soon outgrew the bleached spots (the appearance of Xanthi at 0.5 mg/liter was approximately equivalent to Nt\_pPH143 1B-1 at 100 mg/liter, giving a tolerance of ca. 200-fold).

#### Example 45: Plastid Transformation of Maize

Type I embryogenic callus cultures (Green *et al.* (1983) in A. Fazelahmad, K. Downey, J. Schultz, R.W. Voellmy, eds. *Advances in Gene Technology: Molecular Genetics of Plants and Animals*. Miami Winter Symposium Series, Vol. 20. Academic Press, N.Y.) of the proprietary genotypes CG00526 and CG00714 are initiated from immature embryos, 1.5 - 2.5 mm in length, from greenhouse grown material. Embryos are aseptically excised from surface-sterilized ears approximately 14 days after pollination. Embryos of CG00526 are placed on D callus initiation media with 2% sucrose and 5mg/L chloramben (Duncan *et al.* (1985) *Planta* 165: 322-332) while those of CG00714 are placed onto KM callus initiation media with 3% sucrose and 0.75mg/L 2,4-d (Kao and Michayluk (1975) *Planta* 126, 105-110). Embryos and embryogenic cultures are subsequently cultured in the dark. Embryogenic responses are removed from the explants after ~14 days. CG00526 responses are placed onto D callus maintenance media with 2% sucrose and 0.5mg/L 2,4-d while those of CG00714 are placed onto KM callus maintenance media with 2%



sucrose and 5mg/L Dicamba. After 3 to 8 weeks of weekly selective subculture to fresh maintenance media, high quality compact embryogenic cultures are established. Actively growing embryogenic callus pieces are selected as target tissue for gene delivery. The callus pieces are plated onto target plates containing maintenance medium with 12% sucrose approximately 4 hours prior to gene delivery. The callus pieces are arranged in circles, with radii of 8 and 10mm from the center of the target plate. Plasmid DNA is precipitated onto gold microcarriers as described in the DuPont Biolistics manual. Two to three  $\mu$ g of each plasmid is used in each 6 shot microcarrier preparation. Genes are delivered to the target tissue cells using the PDS-1000He Biolistics device. The settings on the Biolistics device are as follows: 8 mm between the rupture disc and the macrocarrier, 10 mm between the macrocarrier and the stopping screen and 7 cm between the stopping screen and the target. Each target plate is shot twice using 650psi rupture discs. A 200 X 200 stainless steel mesh (McMaster-Carr, New Brunswick, NJ) is placed between the stopping screen and the target tissue.

Five days later, the bombed callus pieces are transferred to maintenance medium with 2% sucrose and 0.5mg/L 2,4-d, but without amino acids, and containing 750 or 1000 nM Formula XVII. The callus pieces are placed for 1 hour on the light shelf 4-5 hours after transfer or on the next day, and stored in the dark at 27°C for 5-6 weeks. Following the 5-6 week primary selection stage, yellow to white tissue is transferred to fresh plates containing the same medium supplemented with 500 or 750 nM Formula XVII. 4-5 hours after transfer or on the next day, the tissues are placed for 1 hour on the light shelf and stored in the dark at 27°C for 3-4 weeks. Following the 3-4 week secondary selection stage, the tissues are transferred to plates containing the same medium supplemented with 500 nM Formula XVII. Healthy growing tissue is placed for 1 hour on the light shelf and stored in the dark at 27°C. It is subcultured every two weeks until the colonies are large enough for regeneration.

At that point, colonies are transferred to a modified MS medium (Murashige and Skoog (1962) *Physiol. Plant* 15: 473-497) containing 3% sucrose (MS3S) with no selection agent and placed in the light. For CG00526, 0.25mg/L ancymidol and 0.5mg/L kinetin are added to this medium to induce embryo germination, while for CG00714, 2mg/L benzyl adenine is added. Regenerating colonies are transferred to MS3S media without ancymidol and kinetin, or benzyl adenine, for CG00526 or CG00714, respectively, after 2 weeks. Regenerating shoots with or

without roots are transferred to boxes containing MS3S medium and small plants with roots are eventually recovered and transferred to soil in the greenhouse.

## Section E. Herbicide Tolerant Protox Genes Produced By DNA Shuffling

5

### Example 46: *In vitro* Recombination of Protox Genes by DNA Shuffling

One of the plant protox genes described herein (SEQ ID NO:1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 15, 17, 19, 21, 23, or 36) or one of the above-described inhibitor-resistant mutants thereof is amplified by PCR. The resulting DNA fragment is digested by DNaseI treatment essentially as described in Stemmer *et al.*, *PNAS* 91: 10747-10751 (1994), and the PCR primers are removed from the reaction mixture. A PCR reaction is carried out without primers and is followed by a PCR reaction with the primers, both as described in Stemmer *et al.* (1994). The resulting DNA fragments are cloned into pTRC99a (Pharmacia, Cat no: 27-5007-01) and transformed into *E.coli* strain SASX38 by electroporation using the Biorad Gene Pulser and the manufacturer's conditions. The transformed bacteria are grown on medium that contains inhibitory concentrations of the inhibitor and those colonies that grow in the presence of the inhibitor are selected. Colonies that grow in the presence of normally inhibitory concentrations of inhibitor are picked and purified by repeated restreaking. Their plasmids are purified and the DNA sequences of cDNA inserts from plasmids that pass this test are then determined.

In a similar reaction, PCR-amplified DNA fragments comprising one of the plant protox genes described herein (SEQ ID NO:1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 15, 17, 19, 21, 23, or 36, or an inhibitor-resistant mutants thereof), and PCR-amplified DNA fragments comprising at least one other of the plant protox genes described herein (or an inhibitor-resistant mutant thereof) are recombined *in vitro* and resulting variants with improved tolerance to the inhibitor are recovered as described above.

Example 47: *In vitro* Recombination of Protox Genes by Staggered Extension Process

Two or more of the plant protox genes described herein (selected from SEQ ID NO:1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 15, 17, 19, 21, 23, and 36, or an inhibitor-resistant mutant thereof) are each cloned  
5 into the polylinker of a pBluescript vector. A PCR reaction is carried out essentially as described in Zhao *et al.*, *Nature Biotechnology* 16: 258-261 (1998) using the “reverse primer” and the “M13 20 primer” (Stratagene Catalog). Amplified PCR fragments are digested with appropriate restriction enzymes and cloned into pTRC99a and mutated protox genes with improved tolerance to the inhibitor are recovered as described above.

119

Table 1A

Alignment of the full-length and partial protox-1 amino acid sequences from *Arabidopsis* ("Arabpt-1"; SEQ ID NO:2), maize ("Mzpt-1"; SEQ ID NO:6), wheat ("Wtpt-1"; SEQ ID NO:10), soybean ("Soybeanpt-1"; SEQ ID NO:12), cotton ("Cottonpt-1"; SEQ ID NO:16), sugar beet ("Sugpt-1"; SEQ ID NO:18), oilseed rape ("Rapept-1"; SEQ ID NO:20), rice ("Ricept-1"; SEQ ID NO:22), sorghum ("Sorghumpt-1"; SEQ ID NO:24), and sugar cane ("Scpt-1"; SEQ ID NO:37). Alignment was performed using the PileUp program (GCG package, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI). Positions that may be modified according to the teachings herein to confer or enhance inhibitor resistance are shown in bold type.

	1					50
Rapept-1	.....	MDLSLLRP..	QPFLSPFSNP	FPRSRYPKPL		
Arabpt-1	.....	MELSLLRPTT	QSLLPFSK	NRLNVYKPL		
Sorghumpt-1	.....	.....	.....	.....		
Mzpt-1	.....	.....	.....	.....		
Wtpt-1	.....	.....	.....M	ATATVAAASP	LRGRVTGRPH	
Ricept-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	
Cottonpt-1	.....	.....MTAL	IDLSLLRSSP	SVSPFSIPHH	QHPPRFRKPF	
Soybeanpt1	.....MV	SVFNEILFPP	NQTLRLPSLH	SPTSFFTSPT	RKFPRSRLPNP	
Sugpt-1	MKSMALSNCI	PQTQCMPLRS	SGHYRGNCIM	LSIPCSLIGR	RGYYSHKKRR	
Scpt-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	
	51					100
Rapept-1	NLRCSVSGGS	VVGSSSTIEGG	GGGKTVTADC	VIVGGGISGL	CIAQALVTKH	
Arabpt-1	RLRCSVAGGP	TVGSSKIEGG	GGT.TITDC	VIVGGGISGL	CIAQALATKH	
Sorghumpt-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	
Mzpt-1	.....	.....	.....ADC	VVVGGISGL	CTAQALATRH	
Wtpt-1	RVRPRCATAS	SATETPAAPG	VRL...SAEC	VIVGAGISGL	CTAQALATRY	
Ricept-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	
Cottonpt-1	KLRCSLAEGP	TISSSKIDGG	ESS...IADC	VIVGGGISGL	CIAQALATKH	
Soybeanpt1	ILRCSIAEES	TASPPKTR..	DSA...PVDC	VVVGGSVSL	CIAQALATKH	
Sugpt-1	MSMSCSTSSG	SKSAVKEAGS	GSGAGLLDC	VIVGGGISGL	CIAQALCTKH	
Scpt-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	
	101					150
Rapept-1	PDA..AKNVM	VTEAKDRVGG	NIIT..REEQ	GFLWEEGPNS	FQPSDPMLTM	
Arabpt-1	PDA..APNLI	VTEAKDRVGG	NIIT..REEN	GFLWEEGPNS	FQPSDPMLTM	
Sorghumpt-1	.....	.....	..STVERPEE	GYLWEEGPNS	FQPSDPVLSM	
Mzpt-1	..G..VGDL	VTEARARPGG	NITTVERPEE	GYLWEEGPNS	FQPSDPVLT	
Wtpt-1	..G..VSDLL	VTEARDRPGG	NITTVERPDE	GYLWEEGPNS	FQPSDPVLT	
Ricept-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	
Cottonpt-1	RDV..ASNVI	VTEARDRVGG	NITTVER..D	GYLWEEGPNS	FQPSDPILTM	
Soybeanpt1	..A..NANVV	VTEARDRVGG	NITTMER..D	GYLWEEGPNS	FQPSDPMLTM	
Sugpt-1	SSSSLSPNFI	VTEAKDRVGG	NIVTVE..AD	GYIWEEGPNS	FQPSDAVLTM	
Scpt-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	

	151				200
Rapept-1	VVDSGLKDDL	VLGDPTAPRF	VLWNGKLRPV	PSKLTDLFFF	DLMSIGGKIR
Arabpt-1	VVDSGLKDDL	VLGDPTAPRF	VLWNGKLRPV	PSKLTDLFFF	DLMSIGGKIR
Sorghumpt-1	AVDSGLKDDL	VFGDPNAPRF	VLWEGKLRPV	PSKPADLFFF	DLMSIPGKLR
Mzpt-1	AVDSGLKDDL	VFGDPNAPRF	VLWEGKLRPV	PSKPADLFFF	DLMSIPGKLR
Wtpt-1	AVDSGLKDDL	VFGDPNAPRF	VLWEGKLRPV	PSKPGDLFFF	SLMSIPGKLR
Ricept-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Cottonpt-1	AVDSGLKDDL	VLGDPNAPRF	VLWEGKLRPV	PSKPTDLFFF	DLMSIAGKLR
Soybeanpt1	VVDSGLKDEL	VLGDPDAPRF	VLWNRKLRPV	PGKLTDLFFF	DLMSIGGKIR
Sugpt-1	AVDSGLKDEL	VLGDPNAPRF	VLWNDKLRPV	PSSLTDLFFF	DLMTIPGKIR
Scpt-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
	201				250
Rapept-1	AGFGAIGIRP	SPPGREESVE	EFVRRNLGDE	VFERLIEPFC	SGVYAGDPAK
Arabpt-1	AGFGALGIRP	SPPGREESVE	EFVRRNLGDE	VFERLIEPFC	SGVYAGDPSK
Sorghumpt-1	AGLGALGIRP	PAPGREESVE	EFVRRNLGAE	VFERLIEPFC	SGVYAGDPSK
Mzpt-1	AGLGALGIRP	PPPGREESVE	EFVRRNLGAE	VFERLIEPFC	SGVYAGDPSK
Wtpt-1	AGLGALGIRP	PPPGREESVE	EFVRRNLGAE	VFERLIEPFC	SGVYAGDPSK
Ricept-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Cottonpt-1	AGFGAIGIRP	PPPGYEEESVE	EFVRRNLGAE	VFERFIEPFC	SGVYAGDPSK
Soybeanpt1	AGFGALGIRP	PPPGHEESVE	EFVRRNLGDE	VFERLIEPFC	SGVYAGDPSK
Sugpt-1	AALGALGFRP	SPPPHHEESVE	HFVRRNLGDE	VFERLIEPFC	SGVYAGDPAK
Scpt-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
	251				300
Rapept-1	LSMKAAFGKV	WKLEENGSSI	IGGAFFKAIQA	KNKAPKTTRD	PRLPKPKGQT
Arabpt-1	LSMKAAFGKV	WKLEQNGSSI	IGGTFFKAIQE	RKNAPKAERD	PRLPKPQGQT
Sorghumpt-1	LSMKAAFGKV	WRLEEAGGSI	IGGTIKTIQE	RGKNPKPPRD	PRLPKPKGQT
Mzpt-1	LSMKAAFGKV	WRLEETGGSI	IGGTIKTIQE	RSKNPKPPRD	ARLPKPKGQT
Wtpt-1	LSMKAAFGKV	WRLEEIGGSI	IGGTIKAIQD	KGKNPKPPRD	PRLPAPKGQT
Ricept-1	RALKAAFGKV	WRLEDTGGSI	IGGTIKTIQE	RGKNPKPPRD	PRLPTPKGQT
Cottonpt-1	LSMKAAFGRV	WKLEEIGGSI	IGGTFFKTIQE	RNKTPKPPRD	PRLPKPKGQT
Soybeanpt1	LSMKAAFGKV	WKLEKNGGSI	IGGTFFKAIQE	RNGASKPPRD	PRLPKPKGQT
Sugpt-1	LSMKAAFGKV	WKLEQKGGSI	IGGTLLKAIQE	RGSNPKPPRD	QRLPKPKGQT
Scpt-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
	301				350
Rapept-1	VGSFRKGLTM	LPEAISARLG	DKVKVSWKLS	SITKLASGEY	SLTYETPEGI
Arabpt-1	VGSFRKGLRM	LPEAISARLG	SKVKLSWKLS	GITKLESGGY	NLTYPETDGL
Sorghumpt-1	VASFRKGLAM	LPNAITSSLG	SKVKLSWKLT	SMTKSDGKGY	VLEYETPEGV
Mzpt-1	VASFRKGLAM	LPNAITSSLG	SKVKLSWKLT	SITKSDDKGY	VLEYETPEGV
Wtpt-1	VASFRKGLAM	LPNAIASRLG	SKVKLSWKLT	SITKADNQG	VLGYETPEGL
Ricept-1	VASFRKGLTM	LPDAITSRLG	SKVKLSWKLT	SITKSDNKG	ALVYETPEGV
Cottonpt-1	VGSFRKGLTM	LPEAIANS LG	SNVKLSWKLS	SITKLGNGGY	NLTFETPEGM
Soybeanpt1	VGSFRKGLTM	LPDAISARLG	NKVKLSWKLS	SISKLDSGEY	SLTYETPEGV
Sugpt-1	VGSFRKGLVM	LPTAISARLG	SRVKLSWTL	SIVKSLNGEY	SLTYDTPDGL
Scpt-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

351 400

Rapept-1	VTVQSKSVVM	TVPSHVASSL	LRPLSDSAAE	ALSKLYYPPV	AAVSISYAKE
Arabpt-1	VSVQSKSVVM	TVPSHVASGL	LRPLSESAAN	ALSKLYYPPV	AAVSISYPKE
Sorghumpt-1	VLVQAKSVIM	TIPSYVASDI	LRPLSGDAAD	VLSRFYYPPV	AAVTVSYPKE
Mzpt-1	VSVQAKSVIM	TIPSYVASNI	LRPLSSDAAD	ALSRFYYPPV	AAVTVSYPKE
Wtpt-1	VSVQAKSVIM	TIPSYVASDI	LRPLSIDAAD	ALSKFYYPPV	AAVTVSYPKE
Ricept-1	VSVQAKTVVM	TIPSYVASDI	LRPLSSDAAD	ALSIFYYPPV	AAVTVSYPKE
Cottonpt-1	VSLQSRSVVM	TIPSHVASNL	LHPLSAAAAD	ALSQFYYPPV	ASVTVSYPKE
Soybeanpt1	VSLQCKTVVL	TIPSYVASTL	LRPLSAAAAD	ALSKFYYPPV	AAVSISYPKE
Sugpt-1	VSVRTKSVVM	TVPSYVASRL	LRPLSDSAAE	SLSKFYYPPV	AAVSLSYPKE
Scpt-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

401 450

Rapept-1	AIRSECLIDG	ELKGFGQLHP	RTQKVETLGT	IYSSSLFPNR	APPGRVLLLN
Arabpt-1	AIRTECLIDG	ELKGFGQLHP	RTQGVETLGT	IYSSSLFPNR	APPGRILLLN
Sorghumpt-1	AIRKECLIDG	ELQGFQQLHP	RSQGVETLGT	IYSSSLFPNR	APAGRVLLLN
Mzpt-1	AIRKECLIDG	ELQGFQQLHP	RSQGVETLGT	IYSSSLFPNR	APDGRVLLLN
Wtpt-1	AIRKECLIDG	ELQGFQQLHP	RSQGVETLGT	IYSSSLFPNR	APAGRVLLLN
Ricept-1	AIRKECLIDG	ELQGFQQLHP	RSQGVETLGT	IYSSSLFPNR	APAGRVLLLN
Cottonpt-1	AIRKECLIDG	ELKGFGQLHP	RSQGIETLGT	IYSSSLFPNR	APSGRVLLLN
Soybeanpt1	AIRSECLIDG	ELKGFGQLHP	RSQGVETLGT	IYSSSLFPNR	APPGRVLLLN
Sugpt-1	AIRSECLING	ELQGFQQLHP	RSQGVETLGT	IYSSSLFPGR	APPGRILILS
Scpt-1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

451 500

Rapept-1	YIGGATNTGI	LSKSEGELVE	AVDRDLRKML	IKPSSTDPLV	LGVKLWQPQAI
Arabpt-1	YIGGSTNTGI	LSKSEGELVE	AVDRDLRKML	IKPNSTDPLK	LGVRVWPQAI
Sorghumpt-1	YIGGATNTGI	VSKTESELVE	AVDRDLRKML	INPTAVDPLV	LGVRVWPQAI
Mzpt-1	YIGGATNTGI	VSKTESELVE	AVDRDLRKML	INSTAVDPLV	LGVRVWPQAI
Wtpt-1	YIGGSTNTGI	VSKTESDLVG	AVDRDLRKML	INPRAADPLA	LGVRVWPQAI
Ricept-1	YIGGSTNTGI	VSKTESELVE	AVDRDLRKML	INPRAVDPLV	LGVRVWPQAI
Cottonpt-1	YIGGATNTGI	LSKTEGELVE	AVDRDLRKML	INPNAKDPLV	LGVRVWPQAI
Soybeanpt1	YIGGATNTGI	LSKTDSELVE	TVDRDLRKIL	INPNAQDPFV	VGVRVWPQAI
Sugpt-1	YIGGAKNPGI	LNKSKDELAK	TVDKDLRRML	INPDAKLPRV	LGVRVWPQAI
Scpt-1	.....	.SKTESELVE	AVDRDLRKML	INPTAVDPLV	LGVRVWPQAI

501 550

Rapept-1	PQFLIGHIDL	VDAAKASLSS	SGHEGLFLGG	NYVAGVALGR	CVEGAYETAT
Arabpt-1	PQFLVGHFID	LDTAKSSLTS	SGYEGLFLGG	NYVAGVALGR	CVEGAYETAI
Sorghumpt-1	PQFLVGHLDL	LEAAKSALDQ	GGYNGFLFLGG	NYVAGVALGR	CIEGAYESAA
Mzpt-1	PQFLVGHLDL	LEAAKAALDR	GGYDGLFLGG	NYVAGVALGR	CVEGAYESAS
Wtpt-1	PQFLIGHLDR	LAAAKSALGQ	GGYDGLFLGG	KYVAGVALGR	CIEGAYESAS
Ricept-1	PQFLIGHLDH	LEAAKSALGK	GGYDGLFLGG	NYVAGVALGR	CVEGAYESAS
Cottonpt-1	PQFLVGHLDL	LDSAKMALRD	SGFHGLFLGG	NYVSGVALGR	CVEGAYEVAA
Soybeanpt1	PQFLVGHLDL	LDVAKASIRN	TGFEGFLFLGG	NYVSGVALGR	CVEGAYEVAA
Sugpt-1	PQFSIGHFDL	LDAAKAALTD	TGVKGLFLGG	NYVSGVALGR	CIEGAYESAA
Scpt-1	PQFLVGHLDL	LEAAKSALDR	GGYDGLFLGG	NYVAGVALGR	CVEGAYESAS

	551	563
Rapept-1	QVNDFMSRYA	YK*
Arabpt-1	EVNNFMSRYA	YK*
Sorghumpt-1	QIYDFLTKYA	YK*
Mzpt-1	QISDFLTKYA	YK*
Wtpt-1	QVSDFLTKYA	YK*
Ricept-1	QISDYLTKYA	YK*
Cottonpt-1	EVKEFLSQYA	YK*
Soybeanpt1	EVNDFLTNRV	YK*
Sugpt-1	EVVDFLSQYS	DK*
Scpt-1	QIYDFLTKYA	YK*

Table 1B

Sub-sequences of herbicide-tolerant protox enzymes comprising point mutations.

#	Sub-sequence	$\Delta_n$ AA wild-type	$\Delta_n$ AA substitutions	Corresponding AA position of $\Delta_n$ in Table 1A	Exemplary mutants
1	AP $\Delta_1$ F	R	C	169	Mz88Cys
2	F $\Delta_2$ S	C	F, L, K	240	Mz159Phe Mz159Leu Mz159Lys
3	Y $\Delta_3$ G	A	V, T, L, C, I	245	pAraC-1Val pAraC-1Thr pAraC-1Leu pAraC-1Cys pAraC-1Ile pMzC-1Val pMzC-1Thr pMzC-1Leu pWhtC-1Val pWhtC-1Thr pSoyC-1Thr pSoyC-1Leu
4	A $\Delta_4$ D	G	S, L	246	pAraC-3Ser pMzC-3Ser pMzC-3Leu pWhtC-3Ser
5	Y $\Delta_5$ P	P	S, H	388	Soy369Ser Soy369His Cot365Ser
6	P $\Delta_6$ A	V	L	390	Wht356Leu

7	$\Delta_7$ IG	Y	C, I, L, T, M, V, A, R	451	pAraC-2Cys pAraC-2Ile pAraC-2Leu pAraC-2Thr pAraC-2Met pAraC-2Val pAraC-2Ala pMzC-2Ile pMzC-2Met pSoyC-2Leu pSoyC-2Ile pSugC-2Cys pSugC-2Leu pSugC-2Ile pSugC-2Val pSugC-2Met pCotC-2Cys pCotC-2Arg
8	YIGG $\Delta_8$	A, S	P	455	Wht421Pro
9	AA $\Delta_9$ P	I	T, H, G, N	500	Mz419Thr Mz419His Mz419Gly Mz419Asn Wht466Thr
10	G $\Delta_{10}$ A	V	A	536	Wht502Ala Soy517Ala
Second-site mutations					
11	Q $\Delta_{11}$ S	P	L	143	AraC118Leu
12	IGG $\Delta_{12}$	T	I, A	274	AraC249Ile AraC249Ala
13	SWXL $\Delta_{13}$	S, T	L	330	AraC305Leu
14	L $\Delta_{14}$ Y	N	S	450	AraC425Ser
15	G $\Delta_{15}$ XGL	Y, H, F, V	C	523	AraC498Cys
Double mutation					
16	T $\Delta_{16}$ G	L	S	428	Mz347Ser453Thr
17	YV $\Delta_{17}$ G	A, (S)	T	534	



Comparison of the *Arabidopsis* (SEQ ID NO:4) and maize (SEQ ID NO:8) protox-2 amino acid sequences. Identical residues are denoted by the vertical bars between the two sequences. Alignment was performed using the GAP program described in Deveraux *et al.*, *Nucleic Acids Res.* 12:387-395 (1984). Percent similarity: 75.889 / percent identity: 57.905.

[illegible]

Table 3A

Cross tolerance of plant protox mutants to various protox inhibitors.

Formula	AraC-1Val	AraC-2Cys	AraC-1Thr	AraC-3Thr	MzC-1Val
XVII	+	+	+	+	+
VIIa	+	+	+	-	+
IV	++	-	++	++	-
XV	+	+	+	+	+
XI	-	+	+	++	+
XVI	-	-	-	-	+
XII	+	-	++	++	++
XIV	+	-	+	+	+
*X					

+ = 10X or more tolerant than WT

++ = 100X or more tolerant than WT

- = no cross tolerance

\* = this compound was tested but provided no information

Table 3B

Cross tolerance of plant protox mutants to various protox inhibitors.

Formula	AraC-1Leu	AraC-2Ile	AraC-1Leu + AraC-2Met	AraC-1Leu + AraC-2Leu	AraC-2Ile + AraC-305Leu	AraC-2Cys + AraC-425Ser	AraC-2Leu + AraC-425Ser	AraC-2Met + AraC-425Ser
XVII	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
VIIa	++	++	++	++	++	++	++	++
IV	++	-	+	++	+	-	+	+
XV	++	+++	+++	+++	+++	++	+++	++
XI	++	++	++	++	++	++	++	++
XVI	+++	+++	+++	+++	+++	+	++	++
XII								
XIV	++	++	++	++	++	-	++	++

Table 4

Cross tolerance to various protox inhibitors in a seed germination assay.

Formula	Common name	Tolerance
II	acifluorfen	+
III	fomasafen	+
IV	fluoroglycofen	±
IVb	bifenox	+
IVc	oxyfluorfen	+
IVd	lactofen	±
VIIa	fluthiacet-methyl	++
X	sulfentrazone	+
XI	flupropazil	++
XIV	flumiclorac	+
XVI	flumioxazin	+++
XVII		++
XXIa	BAY 11340	+
XXII		++

± ≤ 10X more tolerant than wt

+ ≥ 10X more tolerant than wt

++ ≥ 100X more tolerant than wt

+++ ≥ 1000X more tolerant than wt

Various modifications of the invention described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art. Such modifications are intended to fall within the scope of the appended claims.

## SEQUENCE LISTING

## (1) GENERAL INFORMATION:

- (i) APPLICANT: Ward, Eric  
Volrath, Sandra  
Johnson, Marie  
Potter, Sharon
- (ii) TITLE OF INVENTION: HERBICIDE TOLERANT PROTOX GENES PRODUCED BY DNA SHUFFLING
- (iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 37
- (iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:  
(A) ADDRESSEE: Novartis Corporation  
(B) STREET: 3054 Cornwallis Road  
(C) CITY: Research Triangle Park  
(D) STATE: NC  
(E) COUNTRY: USA  
(F) ZIP: 27709
- (v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:  
(A) MEDIUM TYPE: Floppy disk  
(B) COMPUTER: IBM PC compatible  
(C) OPERATING SYSTEM: PC-DOS/MS-DOS  
(D) SOFTWARE: PatentIn Release #1.0, Version #1.30
- (vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:  
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER:  
(B) FILING DATE:  
(C) CLASSIFICATION:
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:  
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 09/059,164  
(B) FILING DATE: 13-APR-1998
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:  
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 09/050,603  
(B) FILING DATE: 30-MAR-1998
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:  
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 09/038,878  
(B) FILING DATE: 11-MAR-1998
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:  
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 08/808,931  
(B) FILING DATE: 28-FEB-1997
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:  
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 60/012,705  
(B) FILING DATE: 28-FEB-1996
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:  
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 60/013,612  
(B) FILING DATE: 28-FEB-1996
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:  
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 60/020,003  
(B) FILING DATE: 21-JUN-1996
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:  
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 08/472,028  
(B) FILING DATE: 06-JUN-1995

## (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 08/261,198  
 (B) FILING DATE: 16-JUN-1994

## (viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:

(A) NAME: Meigs, J. Timothy  
 (B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 38,241  
 (C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: CGC1847/CIP4

## (ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:

(A) TELEPHONE: (919) 541-8587  
 (B) TELEFAX: (919) 541-8689

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

TGACAAAATT CCGAATTCTC TGCGATTTCC ATG GAG TTA TCT CTT CTC CGT CCG	54
Met Glu Leu Ser Leu Arg Pro	
1 5	
ACG ACT CAA TCG CTT CTT CCG TCG TTT TCG AAG CCC AAT CTC CGA TTA	102
Thr Thr Gln Ser Leu Leu Pro Ser Phe Ser Lys Pro Asn Leu Arg Leu	
10 15 20	
AAT GTT TAT AAG CCT CTT AGA CTC CGT TGT TCA GTG GCC GGT GGA CCA	150
Asn Val Tyr Lys Pro Leu Arg Leu Arg Cys Ser Val Ala Gly Gly Pro	
25 30 35 40	
ACC GTC GGA TCT TCA AAA ATC GAA GGC GGA GGC ACC ACC ATC ACG	198
Thr Val Gly Ser Ser Lys Ile Glu Gly Gly Gly Thr Thr Ile Thr	
45 50 55	
ACG GAT TGT GTG ATT GTC GGC GGA GGT ATT AGT GGT CTT TGC ATC GCT	246
Thr Asp Cys Val Ile Val Gly Gly Gly Ile Ser Gly Leu Cys Ile Ala	
60 65 70	
CAG GCG CTT GCT ACT AAG CAT CCT GAT GCT GCT CCG AAT TTA ATT GTG	294
Gln Ala Leu Ala Thr Lys His Pro Asp Ala Ala Pro Asn Leu Ile Val	
75 80 85	
ACC GAG GCT AAG GAT CGT GTT GGA GGC AAC ATT ATC ACT CGT GAA GAG	342
Thr Glu Ala Lys Asp Arg Val Gly Gly Asn Ile Ile Thr Arg Glu Glu	
90 95 100	
AAT GGT TTT CTC TGG GAA GAA GGT CCC AAT AGT TTT CAA CCG TCT GAT	390
Asn Gly Phe Leu Trp Glu Glu Gly Pro Asn Ser Phe Gln Pro Ser Asp	
105 110 115 120	
CCT ATG CTC ACT ATG GTG GTA GAT AGT GGT TTG AAG GAT GAT TTG GTG	438
Pro Met Leu Thr Met Val Val Asp Ser Gly Leu Lys Asp Asp Leu Val	
125 130 135	
TTG GGA GAT CCT ACT GCG CCA AGG TTT GTG TTG TGG AAT GGG AAA TTG	486
Leu Gly Asp Pro Thr Ala Pro Arg Phe Val Leu Trp Asn Gly Lys Leu	
140 145 150	
AGG CCG GTT CCA TCG AAG CTA ACA GAC TTA CCG TTC TTT GAT TTG ATG	534
Arg Pro Val Pro Ser Lys Leu Thr Asp Leu Pro Phe Phe Asp Leu Met	
155 160 165	
AGT ATT GGT GGG AAG ATT AGA GCT GGT TTT GGT GCA CTT GGC ATT CGA	582
Ser Ile Gly Gly Lys Ile Arg Ala Gly Phe Gly Ala Leu Gly Ile Arg	
170 175 180	
CCG TCA CCT CCA GGT CGT GAA GAA TCT GTG GAG GAG TTT GTA CGG CGT	630



(2) INFORMATION FOR SEO ID NO:2:

(A) LENGTH: 537 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEO ID NO:2:

131

130					135					140					
Phe	Val	Leu	Trp	Asn	Gly	Lys	Leu	Arg	Pro	Val	Pro	Ser	Lys	Leu	Thr
145					150					155					160
Asp	Leu	Pro	Phe	Phe	Asp	Leu	Met	Ser	Ile	Gly	Gly	Lys	Ile	Arg	Ala
				165					170					175	
Gly	Phe	Gly	Ala	Leu	Gly	Ile	Arg	Pro	Ser	Pro	Pro	Gly	Arg	Glu	Glu
			180					185					190		
Ser	Val	Glu	Glu	Phe	Val	Arg	Arg	Asn	Leu	Gly	Asp	Glu	Val	Phe	Glu
		195					200					205			
Arg	Leu	Ile	Glu	Pro	Phe	Cys	Ser	Gly	Val	Tyr	Ala	Gly	Asp	Pro	Ser
	210					215					220				
Lys	Leu	Ser	Met	Lys	Ala	Ala	Phe	Gly	Lys	Val	Trp	Lys	Leu	Glu	Gln
225					230					235					240
Asn	Gly	Gly	Ser	Ile	Ile	Gly	Gly	Thr	Phe	Lys	Ala	Ile	Gln	Glu	Arg
				245					250					255	
Lys	Asn	Ala	Pro	Lys	Ala	Glu	Arg	Asp	Pro	Arg	Leu	Pro	Lys	Pro	Gln
			260					265					270		
Gly	Gln	Thr	Val	Gly	Ser	Phe	Arg	Lys	Gly	Leu	Arg	Met	Leu	Pro	Glu
		275					280					285			
Ala	Ile	Ser	Ala	Arg	Leu	Gly	Ser	Lys	Val	Lys	Leu	Ser	Trp	Lys	Leu
	290					295					300				
Ser	Gly	Ile	Thr	Lys	Leu	Glu	Ser	Gly	Gly	Tyr	Asn	Leu	Thr	Tyr	Glu
305					310					315					320
Thr	Pro	Asp	Gly	Leu	Val	Ser	Val	Gln	Ser	Lys	Ser	Val	Val	Met	Thr
				325					330					335	
Val	Pro	Ser	His	Val	Ala	Ser	Gly	Leu	Leu	Arg	Pro	Leu	Ser	Glu	Ser
			340					345					350		
Ala	Ala	Asn	Ala	Leu	Ser	Lys	Leu	Tyr	Tyr	Pro	Pro	Val	Ala	Ala	Val
		355					360					365			
Ser	Ile	Ser	Tyr	Pro	Lys	Glu	Ala	Ile	Arg	Thr	Glu	Cys	Leu	Ile	Asp
	370					375					380				
Gly	Glu	Leu	Lys	Gly	Phe	Gly	Gln	Leu	His	Pro	Arg	Thr	Gln	Gly	Val
385					390					395					400
Glu	Thr	Leu	Gly	Thr	Ile	Tyr	Ser	Ser	Ser	Leu	Phe	Pro	Asn	Arg	Ala
				405					410					415	
Pro	Pro	Gly	Arg	Ile	Leu	Leu	Leu	Asn	Tyr	Ile	Gly	Gly	Ser	Thr	Asn
			420					425					430		
Thr	Gly	Ile	Leu	Ser	Lys	Ser	Glu	Gly	Glu	Leu	Val	Glu	Ala	Val	Asp
		435					440					445			
Arg	Asp	Leu	Arg	Lys	Met	Leu	Ile	Lys	Pro	Asn	Ser	Thr	Asp	Pro	Leu
	450					455					460				
Lys	Leu	Gly	Val	Arg	Val	Trp	Pro	Gln	Ala	Ile	Pro	Gln	Phe	Leu	Val
465					470					475					480



(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:3:

(A) LENGTH: 1738 base pairs  
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: CDS

(B) LOCATION: 70..1596

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: /product= "Arabidopsis protox-2"

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:3:

133

80	85	90	
TTT CCA ATT TCA CAG AAA AAG CGG TAT ATT GTG CGG AAT GGT GTA CCT Phe Pro Ile Ser Gln Lys Lys Arg Tyr Ile Val Arg Asn Gly Val Pro 95 100 105			396
GTG ATG CTA CCT ACC AAT CCC ATA GAG CTG GTC ACA AGT AGT GTG CTC Val Met Leu Pro Thr Asn Pro Ile Glu Leu Val Thr Ser Ser Val Leu 110 115 120 125			444
TCT ACC CAA TCT AAG TTT CAA ATC TTG TTG GAA CCA TTT TTA TGG AAG Ser Thr Gln Ser Lys Phe Gln Ile Leu Leu Glu Pro Phe Leu Trp Lys 130 135 140			492
AAA AAG TCC TCA AAA GTC TCA GAT GCA TCT GCT GAA GAA AGT GTA AGC Lys Lys Ser Ser Lys Val Ser Asp Ala Ser Ala Glu Glu Ser Val Ser 145 150 155			540
GAG TTC TTT CAA CGC CAT TTT GGA CAA GAG GTT GTT GAC TAT CTC ATC Glu Phe Phe Gln Arg His Phe Gly Gln Glu Val Val Asp Tyr Leu Ile 160 165 170			588
GAC CCT TTT GTT GGT GGA ACA AGT GCT GCG GAC CCT GAT TCC CTT TCA Asp Pro Phe Val Gly Gly Thr Ser Ala Ala Asp Pro Asp Ser Leu Ser 175 180 185			636
ATG AAG CAT TCT TTC CCA GAT CTC TGG AAT GTA GAG AAA AGT TTT GGC Met Lys His Ser Phe Pro Asp Leu Trp Asn Val Glu Lys Ser Phe Gly 190 195 200 205			684
TCT ATT ATA GTC GGT GCA ATC AGA ACA AAG TTT GCT GCT AAA GGT GGT Ser Ile Ile Val Gly Ala Ile Arg Thr Lys Phe Ala Ala Lys Gly Gly 210 215 220			732
AAA AGT AGA GAC ACA AAG AGT TCT CCT GGC ACA AAA AAG GGT TCG CGT Lys Ser Arg Asp Thr Lys Ser Ser Pro Gly Thr Lys Lys Gly Ser Arg 225 230 235			780
GGG TCA TTC TCT TTT AAG GGG GGA ATG CAG ATT CTT CCT GAT ACG TTG Gly Ser Phe Ser Phe Lys Gly Gly Met Gln Ile Leu Pro Asp Thr Leu 240 245 250			828
TGC AAA AGT CTC TCA CAT GAT GAG ATC AAT TTA GAC TCC AAG GTA CTC Cys Lys Ser Leu Ser His Asp Glu Ile Asn Leu Asp Ser Lys Val Leu 255 260 265			876
TCT TTG TCT TAC AAT TCT GGA TCA AGA CAG GAG AAC TGG TCA TTA TCT Ser Leu Ser Tyr Asn Ser Gly Ser Arg Gln Glu Asn Trp Ser Leu Ser 270 275 280 285			924
TGT GTT TCG CAT AAT GAA ACG CAG AGA CAA AAC CCC CAT TAT GAT GCT Cys Val Ser His Asn Glu Thr Gln Arg Gln Asn Pro His Tyr Asp Ala 290 295 300			972
GTA ATT ATG ACG GCT CCT CTG TGC AAT GTG AAG GAG ATG AAG GTT ATG Val Ile Met Thr Ala Pro Leu Cys Asn Val Lys Glu Met Lys Val Met 305 310 315			1020
AAA GGA GGA CAA CCC TTT CAG CTA AAC TTT CTC CCC GAG ATT AAT TAC Lys Gly Gly Gln Pro Phe Gln Leu Asn Phe Leu Pro Glu Ile Asn Tyr 320 325 330			1068
ATG CCC CTC TCG GTT TTA ATC ACC ACA TTC ACA AAG GAG AAA GTA AAG Met Pro Leu Ser Val Leu Ile Thr Thr Phe Thr Lys Glu Lys Val Lys 335 340 345			1116

AGA CCT CTT GAA GGC TTT GGG GTA CTC ATT CCA TCT AAG GAG CAA AAG 1164  
 Arg Pro Leu Glu Gly Phe Gly Val Leu Ile Pro Ser Lys Glu Gln Lys 365  
 350 355 360 365

CAT GGT TTC AAA ACT CTA GGT ACA CTT TTT TCA TCA ATG ATG TTT CCA 1212  
 His Gly Phe Lys Thr Leu Gly Thr Leu Phe Ser Ser Met Met Phe Pro 380  
 370 375 380

GAT CGT TCC CCT AGT GAC GTT CAT CTA TAT ACA ACT TTT ATT GGT GGG 1260  
 Asp Arg Ser Pro Ser Asp Val His Leu Tyr Thr Thr Phe Ile Gly Gly 395  
 385 390 395

AGT AGG AAC CAG GAA CTA GCC AAA GCT TCC ACT GAC GAA TTA AAA CAA 1308  
 Ser Arg Asn Gln Glu Leu Ala Lys Ala Ser Thr Asp Glu Leu Lys Gln 410  
 400 405 410

GTT GTG ACT TCT GAC CTT CAG CGA CTG TTG GGG GTT GAA GGT GAA CCC 1356  
 Val Val Thr Ser Asp Leu Gln Arg Leu Leu Gly Val Glu Gly Glu Pro 425  
 415 420 425

GTG TCT GTC AAC CAT TAC TAT TGG AGG AAA GCA TTC CCG TTG TAT GAC 1404  
 Val Ser Val Asn His Tyr Tyr Trp Arg Lys Ala Phe Pro Leu Tyr Asp 445  
 430 435 440 445

AGC AGC TAT GAC TCA GTC ATG GAA GCA ATT GAC AAG ATG GAG AAT GAT 1452  
 Ser Ser Tyr Asp Ser Val Met Glu Ala Ile Asp Lys Met Glu Asn Asp 460  
 450 455 460

CTA CCT GGG TTC TTC TAT GCA GGT AAT CAT CGA GGG GGG CTC TCT GTT 1500  
 Leu Pro Gly Phe Phe Tyr Ala Gly Asn His Arg Gly Gly Leu Ser Val 475  
 465 470 475

GGG AAA TCA ATA GCA TCA GGT TGC AAA GCA GCT GAC CTT GTG ATC TCA 1548  
 Gly Lys Ser Ile Ala Ser Gly Cys Lys Ala Ala Asp Leu Val Ile Ser 490  
 480 485 490

TAC CTG GAG TCT TGC TCA AAT GAC AAG AAA CCA AAT GAC AGC TTA TAACATTGTC 1603  
 Tyr Leu Glu Ser Cys Ser Asn Asp Lys Lys Pro Asn Asp Ser Leu 505  
 495 500 505

AAGGTTTCGTC CCTTTTATC ACTTACTTTG TAAACTTGTA AAATGCAACA AGCCGCCGTG 1663

CGATTAGCCA ACAACTCAGC AAAACCCAGA TTCTCATAAG GCTCACTAAT TCCAGAATAA 1723

ACTATTTATG TAAAA 1738

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:4:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 508 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:4:

Met Ala Ser Gly Ala Val Ala Asp His Gln Ile Glu Ala Val Ser Gly  
 1 5 10 15

Lys Arg Val Ala Val Val Gly Ala Gly Val Ser Gly Leu Ala Ala Ala  
 20 25 30



(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:5:

(A) LENGTH: 1691 base pairs  
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: CDS

(B) LOCATION: 1..1443

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: /product= "Maize protox-1

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:5:

CAG GCG CTG GCC ACG CGG CAC GGC GTC GGG GAC GTG CTT GTC ACG GAG      96  
Gln Ala Leu Ala Thr Arg His Gly Val Gly Asp Val Leu Val Thr Glu  
20 25 30

137



TAT TAT CCA CCG GTT GCT GCT GTA ACT GTT TCG TAT CCA AAG GAA GCA 960  
 Tyr Tyr Pro Pro Val Ala Ala Val Thr Val Ser Tyr Pro Lys Glu Ala  
 305 310 315 320  
 ATT AGA AAA GAA TGC TTA ATT GAT GGG GAA CTC CAG GGC TTT GGC CAG 1008  
 Ile Arg Lys Glu Cys Leu Ile Asp Gly Glu Leu Gln Gly Phe Gly Gln  
 325 330 335  
 TTG CAT CCA CGT AGT CAA GGA GTT GAG ACA TTA GGA ACA ATA TAC AGT 1056  
 Leu His Pro Arg Ser Gln Gly Val Glu Thr Leu Gly Thr Ile Tyr Ser  
 340 345 350  
 TCC TCA CTC TTT CCA AAT CGT GCT CCT GAC GGT AGG GTG TTA CTT CTA 1104  
 Ser Ser Leu Phe Pro Asn Arg Ala Pro Asp Gly Arg Val Leu Leu Leu  
 355 360 365  
 AAC TAC ATA GGA GGT GCT ACA AAC ACA GGA ATT GTT TCC AAG ACT GAA 1152  
 Asn Tyr Ile Gly Gly Ala Thr Asn Thr Gly Ile Val Ser Lys Thr Glu  
 370 375 380  
 AGT GAG CTG GTC GAA GCA GTT GAC CGT GAC CTC CGA AAA ATG CTT ATA 1200  
 Ser Glu Leu Val Glu Ala Val Asp Arg Asp Leu Arg Lys Met Leu Ile  
 385 390 395 400  
 AAT TCT ACA GCA GTG GAC CCT TTA GTC CTT GGT GTT CGA GTT TGG CCA 1248  
 Asn Ser Thr Ala Val Asp Pro Leu Val Leu Gly Val Arg Val Trp Pro  
 405 410 415  
 CAA GCC ATA CCT CAG TTC CTG GTA GGA CAT CTT GAT CTT CTG GAA GCC 1296  
 Gln Ala Ile Pro Gln Phe Leu Val Gly His Leu Asp Leu Leu Glu Ala  
 420 425 430  
 GCA AAA GCT GCC CTG GAC CGA GGT GGC TAC GAT GGG CTG TTC CTA GGA 1344  
 Ala Lys Ala Ala Leu Asp Arg Gly Gly Tyr Asp Gly Leu Phe Leu Gly  
 435 440 445  
 GGG AAC TAT GTT GCA GGA GTT GCC CTG GGC AGA TGC GTT GAG GGC GCG 1392  
 Gly Asn Tyr Val Ala Gly Val Ala Leu Gly Arg Cys Val Glu Gly Ala  
 450 455 460  
 TAT GAA AGT GCC TCG CAA ATA TCT GAC TTC TTG ACC AAG TAT GCC TAC 1440  
 Tyr Glu Ser Ala Ser Gln Ile Ser Asp Phe Leu Thr Lys Tyr Ala Tyr  
 465 470 475 480  
 AAG TGATGAAAGA AGTGGAGCGC TACTTGTTAA TCGTTTATGT TGCATAGATG 1493  
 Lys  
 AGGTGCCTCC GGGGAAAAAA AAGCTTGAAT AGTATTTTTT ATTCTTATTT TGTAAATTGC 1553  
 ATTTCTGTTT TTTTCTCTAT CAGTAATTAG TTATATTTTA GTTCTGTAGG AGATTGTTCT 1613  
 GTTCACTGCC CTTCAAAAGA AATTTTATTT TTCATTCTTT TATGAGAGCT GTGCTACTTA 1673  
 AAAAAAAAAA AAAAAAAAAA 1691

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:6:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 481 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:6:

Ala Asp Cys Val Val Val Gly Gly Gly Ile Ser Gly Leu Cys Thr Ala  
 1 5 10 15  
 Gln Ala Leu Ala Thr Arg His Gly Val Gly Asp Val Leu Val Thr Glu  
 20 25 30  
 Ala Arg Ala Arg Pro Gly Gly Asn Ile Thr Thr Val Glu Arg Pro Glu  
 35 40 45  
 Glu Gly Tyr Leu Trp Glu Glu Gly Pro Asn Ser Phe Gln Pro Ser Asp  
 50 55 60  
 Pro Val Leu Thr Met Ala Val Asp Ser Gly Leu Lys Asp Asp Leu Val  
 65 70 75 80  
 Phe Gly Asp Pro Asn Ala Pro Arg Phe Val Leu Trp Glu Gly Lys Leu  
 85 90 95  
 Arg Pro Val Pro Ser Lys Pro Ala Asp Leu Pro Phe Phe Asp Leu Met  
 100 105 110  
 Ser Ile Pro Gly Lys Leu Arg Ala Gly Leu Gly Ala Leu Gly Ile Arg  
 115 120 125  
 Pro Pro Pro Pro Gly Arg Glu Glu Ser Val Glu Glu Phe Val Arg Arg  
 130 135 140  
 Asn Leu Gly Ala Glu Val Phe Glu Arg Leu Ile Glu Pro Phe Cys Ser  
 145 150 155 160  
 Gly Val Tyr Ala Gly Asp Pro Ser Lys Leu Ser Met Lys Ala Ala Phe  
 165 170 175  
 Gly Lys Val Trp Arg Leu Glu Glu Thr Gly Gly Ser Ile Ile Gly Gly  
 180 185 190  
 Thr Ile Lys Thr Ile Gln Glu Arg Ser Lys Asn Pro Lys Pro Pro Arg  
 195 200 205  
 Asp Ala Arg Leu Pro Lys Pro Lys Gly Gln Thr Val Ala Ser Phe Arg  
 210 215 220  
 Lys Gly Leu Ala Met Leu Pro Asn Ala Ile Thr Ser Ser Leu Gly Ser  
 225 230 235 240  
 Lys Val Lys Leu Ser Trp Lys Leu Thr Ser Ile Thr Lys Ser Asp Asp  
 245 250 255  
 Lys Gly Tyr Val Leu Glu Tyr Glu Thr Pro Glu Gly Val Val Ser Val  
 260 265 270  
 Gln Ala Lys Ser Val Ile Met Thr Ile Pro Ser Tyr Val Ala Ser Asn  
 275 280 285  
 Ile Leu Arg Pro Leu Ser Ser Asp Ala Ala Asp Ala Leu Ser Arg Phe  
 290 295 300  
 Tyr Tyr Pro Pro Val Ala Ala Val Thr Val Ser Tyr Pro Lys Glu Ala  
 305 310 315 320  
 Ile Arg Lys Glu Cys Leu Ile Asp Gly Glu Leu Gln Gly Phe Gly Gln



(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:7:

(A) LENGTH: 2061 base pairs

(B) TYPE: nucleic acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: *Zea mays* (maize)

(vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:

(B) CLONE: pWDC-3 (NRRL B-21259)

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: CDS

(B) LOCATION: 64..1698

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: /product= "Maize protox-2"

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:7:

CTCTCCTACC TCCACCTCCA CGACAACAAG CAAATCCCCA TCCAGTTCCA AACCCCTAACT 60

CAA	ATG	CTC	GCT	TTG	ACT	GCC	TCA	GCC	TCA	TCC	GCT	TCG	TCC	CAT	CCT	108
	Met	Leu	Ala	Leu	Thr	Ala	Ser	Ala	Ser	Ser	Ala	Ser	Ser	His	Pro	
	1				5					10					15	

TAT	CGC	CAC	GCC	TCC	GCG	CAC	ACT	CGT	CGC	CCC	CGC	CTA	CGT	GCG	GTC	156
Tyr	Arg	His	Ala	Ser	Ala	His	Thr	Arg	Arg	Pro	Arg	Leu	Arg	Ala	Val	
			20					25						30		
CTC	GCG	ATG	GCG	GGC	TCC	GAC	GAC	CCC	CGT	GCA	GCG	CCC	GCC	AGA	TCG	204
Leu	Ala	Met	Ala	Gly	Ser	Asp	Asp	Pro	Arg	Ala	Ala	Pro	Ala	Arg	Ser	
		35						40					45			
GTC	GCC	GTC	GTC	GGC	GCC	GGG	GTC	AGC	GGG	CTC	GCG	GCG	GCG	TAC	AGG	252
Val	Ala	Val	Val	Gly	Ala	Gly	Val	Ser	Gly	Leu	Ala	Ala	Ala	Tyr	Arg	
		50					55					60				
CTC	AGA	CAG	AGC	GGC	GTG	AAC	GTA	ACG	GTG	TTC	GAA	GCG	GCC	GAC	AGG	300
Leu	Arg	Gln	Ser	Gly	Val	Asn	Val	Thr	Val	Phe	Glu	Ala	Ala	Asp	Arg	
	65					70					75					
GCG	GGA	GGA	AAG	ATA	CGG	ACC	AAT	TCC	GAG	GGC	GGG	TTT	GTC	TGG	GAT	348
Ala	Gly	Gly	Lys	Ile	Arg	Thr	Asn	Ser	Glu	Gly	Gly	Phe	Val	Trp	Asp	
	80				85				90						95	
GAA	GGA	GCT	AAC	ACC	ATG	ACA	GAA	GGT	GAA	TGG	GAG	GCC	AGT	AGA	CTG	396
Glu	Gly	Ala	Asn	Thr	Met	Thr	Glu	Gly	Glu	Trp	Glu	Ala	Ser	Arg	Leu	
			100						105					110		
ATT	GAT	GAT	CTT	GGT	CTA	CAA	GAC	AAA	CAG	CAG	TAT	CCT	AAC	TCC	CAA	444
Ile	Asp	Asp	Leu	Gly	Leu	Gln	Asp	Lys	Gln	Gln	Tyr	Pro	Asn	Ser	Gln	
			115					120					125			
CAC	AAG	CGT	TAC	ATT	GTC	AAA	GAT	GGA	GCA	CCA	GCA	CTG	ATT	CCT	TCG	492
His	Lys	Arg	Tyr	Ile	Val	Lys	Asp	Gly	Ala	Pro	Ala	Leu	Ile	Pro	Ser	
		130					135					140				
GAT	CCC	ATT	TCG	CTA	ATG	AAA	AGC	AGT	GTT	CTT	TCG	ACA	AAA	TCA	AAG	540
Asp	Pro	Ile	Ser	Leu	Met	Lys	Ser	Ser	Val	Leu	Ser	Thr	Lys	Ser	Lys	
	145					150					155					
ATT	GCG	TTA	TTT	TTT	GAA	CCA	TTT	CTC	TAC	AAG	AAA	GCT	AAC	ACA	AGA	588
Ile	Ala	Leu	Phe	Phe	Glu	Pro	Phe	Leu	Tyr	Lys	Lys	Ala	Asn	Thr	Arg	
	160				165				170						175	
AAC	TCT	GGA	AAA	GTG	TCT	GAG	GAG	CAC	TTG	AGT	GAG	AGT	GTT	GGG	AGC	636
Asn	Ser	Gly	Lys	Val	Ser	Glu	Glu	His	Leu	Ser	Glu	Ser	Val	Gly	Ser	
			180						185					190		
TTC	TGT	GAA	CGC	CAC	TTT	GGA	AGA	GAA	GTT	GTT	GAC	TAT	TTT	GTT	GAT	684
Phe	Cys	Glu	Arg	His	Phe	Gly	Arg	Glu	Val	Val	Asp	Tyr	Phe	Val	Asp	
			195					200					205			
CCA	TTT	GTA	GCT	GGA	ACA	AGT	GCA	GGA	GAT	CCA	GAG	TCA	CTA	TCT	ATT	732
Pro	Phe	Val	Ala	Gly	Thr	Ser	Ala	Gly	Asp	Pro	Glu	Ser	Leu	Ser	Ile	
		210					215					220				
CGT	CAT	GCA	TTC	CCA	GCA	TTG	TGG	AAT	TTG	GAA	AGA	AAG	TAT	GGT	TCA	780
Arg	His	Ala	Phe	Pro	Ala	Leu	Trp	Asn	Leu	Glu	Arg	Lys	Tyr	Gly	Ser	
	225				230					235						
GTT	ATT	GTT	GGT	GCC	ATC	TTG	TCT	AAG	CTA	GCA	GCT	AAA	GGT	GAT	CCA	828
Val	Ile	Val	Gly	Ala	Ile	Leu	Ser	Lys	Leu	Ala	Ala	Lys	Gly	Asp	Pro	
	240				245				250						255	
GTA	AAG	ACA	AGA	CAT	GAT	TCA	TCA	GGG	AAA	AGA	AGG	AAT	AGA	CGA	GTG	876
Val	Lys	Thr	Arg	His	Asp	Ser	Ser	Gly	Lys	Arg	Arg	Asn	Arg	Arg	Val	
			260					265						270		

TCG TTT TCA TTT CAT GGT GGA ATG CAG TCA CTA ATA AAT GCA CTT CAC Ser Phe Ser Phe His Gly Gly Met Gln Ser Leu Ile Asn Ala Leu His 275 280 285	924
AAT GAA GTT GGA GAT GAT AAT GTG AAG CTT GGT ACA GAA GTG TTG TCA Asn Glu Val Gly Asp Asp Asn Val Lys Leu Gly Thr Glu Val Leu Ser 290 295 300	972
TTG GCA TGT ACA TTT GAT GGA GTT CCT GCA CTA GGC AGG TGG TCA ATT Leu Ala Cys Thr Phe Asp Gly Val Pro Ala Leu Gly Arg Trp Ser Ile 305 310 315	1020
TCT GTT GAT TCG AAG GAT AGC GGT GAC AAG GAC CTT GCT AGT AAC CAA Ser Val Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Gly Asp Lys Asp Leu Ala Ser Asn Gln 320 325 330 335	1068
ACC TTT GAT GCT GTT ATA ATG ACA GCT CCA TTG TCA AAT GTC CGG AGG Thr Phe Asp Ala Val Ile Met Thr Ala Pro Leu Ser Asn Val Arg Arg 340 345 350	1116
ATG AAG TTC ACC AAA GGT GGA GCT CCG GTT GTT CTT GAC TTT CTT CCT Met Lys Phe Thr Lys Gly Gly Ala Pro Val Val Leu Asp Phe Leu Pro 355 360 365	1164
AAG ATG GAT TAT CTA CCA CTA TCT CTC ATG GTG ACT GCT TTT AAG AAG Lys Met Asp Tyr Leu Pro Leu Ser Leu Met Val Thr Ala Phe Lys Lys 370 375 380	1212
GAT GAT GTC AAG AAA CCT CTG GAA GGA TTT GGG GTC TTA ATA CCT TAC Asp Asp Val Lys Lys Pro Leu Glu Gly Phe Gly Val Leu Ile Pro Tyr 385 390 395	1260
AAG GAA CAG CAA AAA CAT GGT CTG AAA ACC CTT GGG ACT CTC TTT TCC Lys Glu Gln Gln Lys His Gly Leu Lys Thr Leu Gly Thr Leu Phe Ser 400 405 410 415	1308
TCA ATG ATG TTC CCA GAT CGA GCT CCT GAT GAC CAA TAT TTA TAT ACA Ser Met Met Phe Pro Asp Arg Ala Pro Asp Asp Gln Tyr Leu Tyr Thr 420 425 430	1356
ACA TTT GTT GGG GGT AGC CAC AAT AGA GAT CTT GCT GGA GCT CCA ACG Thr Phe Val Gly Gly Ser His Asn Arg Asp Leu Ala Gly Ala Pro Thr 435 440 445	1404
TCT ATT CTG AAA CAA CTT GTG ACC TCT GAC CTT AAA AAA CTC TTG GGC Ser Ile Leu Lys Gln Leu Val Thr Ser Asp Leu Lys Lys Leu Leu Gly 450 455 460	1452
GTA GAG GGG CAA CCA ACT TTT GTC AAG CAT GTA TAC TGG GGA AAT GCT Val Glu Gly Gln Pro Thr Phe Val Lys His Val Tyr Trp Gly Asn Ala 465 470 475	1500
TTT CCT TTG TAT GGC CAT GAT TAT AGT TCT GTA TTG GAA GCT ATA GAA Phe Pro Leu Tyr Gly His Asp Tyr Ser Ser Val Leu Glu Ala Ile Glu 480 485 490 495	1548
AAG ATG GAG AAA AAC CTT CCA GGG TTC TTC TAC GCA GGA AAT AGC AAG Lys Met Glu Lys Asn Leu Pro Gly Phe Phe Tyr Ala Gly Asn Ser Lys 500 505 510	1596
GAT GGG CTT GCT GTT GGA AGT GTT ATA GCT TCA GGA AGC AAG GCT GCT Asp Gly Leu Ala Val Gly Ser Val Ile Ala Ser Gly Ser Lys Ala Ala 515 520 525	1644
GAC CTT GCA ATC TCA TAT CTT GAA TCT CAC ACC AAG CAT AAT AAT TCA	1692

Asp Leu Ala Ile Ser Tyr Leu Glu Ser His Thr Lys His Asn Asn Ser  
 530 535 540

CAT TGAAAGTGTC TGACCTATCC TCTAGCAGTT GTCGACAAAT TTCTCCAGTT 1745  
 His  
 545

CATGTACAGT AGAAACCGAT GCGTTGCAGT TTCAGAACAT CTTCACTTCT TCAGATATTA 1805  
 ACCCTTCGTT GAACATCCAC CAGAAAGGTA GTCACATGTG TAAGTGGGAA AATGAGGTTA 1865  
 AAAACTATTA TGGCGGCCGA AATGTTTCCTT TTTGTTTTCC TCACAAGTGG CCTACGACAC 1925  
 TTGATGTTGG AAATACATTT AAATTTGTTG AATTGTTTGA GAACACATGC GTGACGTGTA 1985  
 ATATTTGCCT ATTGTGATTT TAGCAGTAGT CTTGGCCAGA TTATGCTTTA CGCCTTTAAA 2045  
 AAAAAAAAAA AAAAAA 2061

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:8:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 544 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:8:

Met Leu Ala Leu Thr Ala Ser Ala Ser Ser Ala Ser Ser His Pro Tyr  
 1 5 10 15  
 Arg His Ala Ser Ala His Thr Arg Arg Pro Arg Leu Arg Ala Val Leu  
 20 25 30  
 Ala Met Ala Gly Ser Asp Asp Pro Arg Ala Ala Pro Ala Arg Ser Val  
 35 40 45  
 Ala Val Val Gly Ala Gly Val Ser Gly Leu Ala Ala Ala Tyr Arg Leu  
 50 55 60  
 Arg Gln Ser Gly Val Asn Val Thr Val Phe Glu Ala Ala Asp Arg Ala  
 65 70 75 80  
 Gly Gly Lys Ile Arg Thr Asn Ser Glu Gly Gly Phe Val Trp Asp Glu  
 85 90 95  
 Gly Ala Asn Thr Met Thr Glu Gly Glu Trp Glu Ala Ser Arg Leu Ile  
 100 105 110  
 Asp Asp Leu Gly Leu Gln Asp Lys Gln Gln Tyr Pro Asn Ser Gln His  
 115 120 125  
 Lys Arg Tyr Ile Val Lys Asp Gly Ala Pro Ala Leu Ile Pro Ser Asp  
 130 135 140  
 Pro Ile Ser Leu Met Lys Ser Ser Val Leu Ser Thr Lys Ser Lys Ile  
 145 150 155 160  
 Ala Leu Phe Phe Glu Pro Phe Leu Tyr Lys Lys Ala Asn Thr Arg Asn  
 165 170 175  
 Ser Gly Lys Val Ser Glu Glu His Leu Ser Glu Ser Val Gly Ser Phe

180 185 190  
 Cys Glu Arg His Phe Gly Arg Glu Val Val Asp Tyr Phe Val Asp Pro  
 195 200 205  
 Phe Val Ala Gly Thr Ser Ala Gly Asp Pro Glu Ser Leu Ser Ile Arg  
 210 215 220  
 His Ala Phe Pro Ala Leu Trp Asn Leu Glu Arg Lys Tyr Gly Ser Val  
 225 230 235 240  
 Ile Val Gly Ala Ile Leu Ser Lys Leu Ala Ala Lys Gly Asp Pro Val  
 245 250 255  
 Lys Thr Arg His Asp Ser Ser Gly Lys Arg Arg Asn Arg Arg Val Ser  
 260 265 270  
 Phe Ser Phe His Gly Gly Met Gln Ser Leu Ile Asn Ala Leu His Asn  
 275 280 285  
 Glu Val Gly Asp Asp Asn Val Lys Leu Gly Thr Glu Val Leu Ser Leu  
 290 295 300  
 Ala Cys Thr Phe Asp Gly Val Pro Ala Leu Gly Arg Trp Ser Ile Ser  
 305 310 315 320  
 Val Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Gly Asp Lys Asp Leu Ala Ser Asn Gln Thr  
 325 330 335  
 Phe Asp Ala Val Ile Met Thr Ala Pro Leu Ser Asn Val Arg Arg Met  
 340 345 350  
 Lys Phe Thr Lys Gly Gly Ala Pro Val Val Leu Asp Phe Leu Pro Lys  
 355 360 365  
 Met Asp Tyr Leu Pro Leu Ser Leu Met Val Thr Ala Phe Lys Lys Asp  
 370 375 380  
 Asp Val Lys Lys Pro Leu Glu Gly Phe Gly Val Leu Ile Pro Tyr Lys  
 385 390 395 400  
 Glu Gln Gln Lys His Gly Leu Lys Thr Leu Gly Thr Leu Phe Ser Ser  
 405 410 415  
 Met Met Phe Pro Asp Arg Ala Pro Asp Asp Gln Tyr Leu Tyr Thr Thr  
 420 425 430  
 Phe Val Gly Gly Ser His Asn Arg Asp Leu Ala Gly Ala Pro Thr Ser  
 435 440 445  
 Ile Leu Lys Gln Leu Val Thr Ser Asp Leu Lys Lys Leu Leu Gly Val  
 450 455 460  
 Glu Gly Gln Pro Thr Phe Val Lys His Val Tyr Trp Gly Asn Ala Phe  
 465 470 475 480  
 Pro Leu Tyr Gly His Asp Tyr Ser Ser Val Leu Glu Ala Ile Glu Lys  
 485 490 495  
 Met Glu Lys Asn Leu Pro Gly Phe Phe Tyr Ala Gly Asn Ser Lys Asp  
 500 505 510  
 Gly Leu Ala Val Gly Ser Val Ile Ala Ser Gly Ser Lys Ala Ala Asp  
 515 520 525

Leu Ala Ile Ser Tyr Leu Glu Ser His Thr Lys His Asn Asn Ser His  
 530 535 540

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:9:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 1811 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

## (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

## (vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: Triticum aestivum (wheat)

## (vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:

- (B) CLONE: pWDC-13 (NRRL B-21545)

## (ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: CDS
- (B) LOCATION: 3..1589
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /product= "wheat protox-1"

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:9:

GC GCA ACA ATG GCC ACC GCC ACC GTC GCG GCC GCG TCG CCG CTC CGC	47
Ala Thr Met Ala Thr Ala Thr Val Ala Ala Ala Ser Pro Leu Arg	
1 5 10 15	
GGC AGG GTC ACC GGG CGC CCA CAC CGC GTC CGC CCG CGT TGC GCT ACC	95
Gly Arg Val Thr Gly Arg Pro His Arg Val Arg Pro Arg Cys Ala Thr	
20 25 30	
GCG AGC AGC GCG ACC GAG ACT CCG GCG GCG CCC GGC GTG CCG CTG TCC	143
Ala Ser Ser Ala Thr Glu Thr Pro Ala Ala Pro Gly Val Arg Leu Ser	
35 40 45	
GCG GAA TGC GTC ATT GTG GGC GCC GGC ATC AGC GGC CTC TGC ACC GCG	191
Ala Glu Cys Val Ile Val Gly Ala Gly Ile Ser Gly Leu Cys Thr Ala	
50 55 60	
CAG GCG CTG GCC ACC CGA TAC GGC GTC AGC GAC CTG CTC GTC ACG GAG	239
Gln Ala Leu Ala Thr Arg Tyr Gly Val Ser Asp Leu Leu Val Thr Glu	
65 70 75	
GCC CGC GAC CGC CCG GGC GGC AAC ATC ACC ACC GTC GAG CGT CCC GAC	287
Ala Arg Asp Arg Pro Gly Gly Asn Ile Thr Thr Val Glu Arg Pro Asp	
80 85 90 95	
GAG GGG TAC CTG TGG GAG GAG GGA CCC AAC AGC TTC CAG CCC TCC GAC	335
Glu Gly Tyr Leu Trp Glu Glu Gly Pro Asn Ser Phe Gln Pro Ser Asp	
100 105 110	
CCG GTC CTC ACC ATG GCC GTG GAC AGC GGG CTC AAG GAT GAC TTG GTG	383
Pro Val Leu Thr Met Ala Val Asp Ser Gly Leu Lys Asp Asp Leu Val	
115 120 125	
TTC GGG GAC CCC AAC GCG CCC CGG TTC GTG CTG TGG GAG GGG AAG CTG	431
Phe Gly Asp Pro Asn Ala Pro Arg Phe Val Leu Trp Glu Gly Lys Leu	

130	135	140	
AGG CCG GTG CCG TCG AAG CCA GGC GAC CTG CCT TTC TTC AGC CTC ATG Arg Pro Val Pro Ser Lys Pro Gly Asp Leu Pro Phe Phe Ser Leu Met 145 150 155			479
AGT ATC CCT GGG AAG CTC AGG GCC GGC CTT GGC GCG CTC GGC ATT CGC Ser Ile Pro Gly Lys Leu Arg Ala Gly Leu Gly Ala Leu Gly Ile Arg 160 165 170 175			527
CCA CCT CCT CCA GGG CGC GAG GAG TCG GTG GAG GAG TTT GTG CGC CGC Pro Pro Pro Pro Gly Arg Glu Glu Ser Val Glu Glu Phe Val Arg Arg 180 185 190			575
AAC CTC GGT GCC GAG GTC TTT GAG CGC CTC ATC GAG CCT TTC TGC TCA Asn Leu Gly Ala Glu Val Phe Glu Arg Leu Ile Glu Pro Phe Cys Ser 195 200 205			623
GGT GTA TAT GCT GGT GAT CCT TCG AAG CTT AGT ATG AAG GCT GCA TTT Gly Val Tyr Ala Gly Asp Pro Ser Lys Leu Ser Met Lys Ala Ala Phe 210 215 220			671
GGG AAG GTC TGG AGG TTG GAG GAG ATT GGA GGT AGT ATT ATT GGT GGA Gly Lys Val Trp Arg Leu Glu Glu Ile Gly Gly Ser Ile Ile Gly Gly 225 230 235			719
ACC ATC AAG GCG ATT CAG GAT AAA GGG AAG AAC CCC AAA CCG CCA AGG Thr Ile Lys Ala Ile Gln Asp Lys Gly Lys Asn Pro Lys Pro Pro Arg 240 245 250 255			767
GAT CCC CGA CTT CCG GCA CCA AAG GGA CAG ACG GTG GCA TCT TTC AGG Asp Pro Arg Leu Pro Ala Pro Lys Gly Gln Thr Val Ala Ser Phe Arg 260 265 270			815
AAG GGT CTA GCC ATG CTC CCG AAT GCC ATC GCA TCT AGG CTG GGT AGT Lys Gly Leu Ala Met Leu Pro Asn Ala Ile Ala Ser Arg Leu Gly Ser 275 280 285			863
AAA GTC AAG CTG TCA TGG AAG CTT ACG AGC ATT ACA AAG GCG GAC AAC Lys Val Lys Leu Ser Trp Lys Leu Thr Ser Ile Thr Lys Ala Asp Asn 290 295 300			911
CAA GGA TAT GTA TTA GGT TAT GAA ACA CCA GAA GGA CTT GTT TCA GTG Gln Gly Tyr Val Leu Gly Tyr Glu Thr Pro Glu Gly Leu Val Ser Val 305 310 315			959
CAG GCT AAA AGT GTT ATC ATG ACC ATC CCG TCA TAT GTT GCT AGT GAT Gln Ala Lys Ser Val Ile Met Thr Ile Pro Ser Tyr Val Ala Ser Asp 320 325 330 335			1007
ATC TTG CGC CCA CTT TCA ATT GAT GCA GCA GAT GCA CTC TCA AAA TTC Ile Leu Arg Pro Leu Ser Ile Asp Ala Ala Asp Ala Leu Ser Lys Phe 340 345 350			1055
TAT TAT CCG CCA GTT GCT GCT GTA ACT GTT TCA TAT CCA AAA GAA GCT Tyr Tyr Pro Pro Val Ala Ala Val Thr Val Ser Tyr Pro Lys Glu Ala 355 360 365			1103
ATT AGA AAA GAA TGC TTA ATT GAT GGG GAG CTC CAG GGT TTC GGC CAG Ile Arg Lys Glu Cys Leu Ile Asp Gly Glu Leu Gln Gly Phe Gly Gln 370 375 380			1151
TTG CAT CCA CGT AGC CAA GGA GTC GAG ACT TTA GGG ACA ATA TAT AGC Leu His Pro Arg Ser Gln Gly Val Glu Thr Leu Gly Thr Ile Tyr Ser 385 390 395			1199

TCT TCT CTC TTT CCT AAT CGT GCT CCT GCT GGA AGA GTG TTA CTT CTG 1247  
 Ser Ser Leu Phe Pro Asn Arg Ala Pro Ala Gly Arg Val Leu Leu Leu  
 400 405 410 415  
 AAC TAT ATC GGG GGT TCT ACA AAT ACA GGG ATC GTC TCC AAG ACT GAG 1295  
 Asn Tyr Ile Gly Gly Ser Thr Asn Thr Gly Ile Val Ser Lys Thr Glu  
 420 425 430  
 AGT GAC TTA GTA GGA GCC GTT GAC CGT GAC CTC AGA AAA ATG TTG ATA 1343  
 Ser Asp Leu Val Gly Ala Val Asp Arg Asp Leu Arg Lys Met Leu Ile  
 435 440 445  
 AAC CCT AGA GCA GCA GAC CCT TTA GCA TTA GGG GTT CGA GTG TGG CCA 1391  
 Asn Pro Arg Ala Ala Asp Pro Leu Ala Leu Gly Val Arg Val Trp Pro  
 450 455 460  
 CAA GCA ATA CCA CAG TTT TTG ATT GGG CAC CTT GAT CGC CTT GCT GCT 1439  
 Gln Ala Ile Pro Gln Phe Leu Ile Gly His Leu Asp Arg Leu Ala Ala  
 465 470 475  
 GCA AAA TCT GCA CTG GGC CAA GGC GGC TAC GAC GGG TTG TTC CTA GGA 1487  
 Ala Lys Ser Ala Leu Gly Gln Gly Gly Tyr Asp Gly Leu Phe Leu Gly  
 480 485 490 495  
 GGA AAC TAC GTC GCA GGA GTT GCC TTG GGC CGA TGC ATC GAG GGT GCG 1535  
 Gly Asn Tyr Val Ala Gly Val Ala Leu Gly Arg Cys Ile Glu Gly Ala  
 500 505 510  
 TAC GAG AGT GCC TCA CAA GTA TCT GAC TTC TTG ACC AAG TAT GCC TAC 1583  
 Tyr Glu Ser Ala Ser Gln Val Ser Asp Phe Leu Thr Lys Tyr Ala Tyr  
 515 520 525  
 AAG TGA TGGAAGTAGT GCATCTCTTC ATTTTGTTC ATATACGAGG TGAGGCTAGG 1639  
 Lys  
 ATCGGTAAAA CATCATGAGA TTCTGTAGTG TTTCTTTAAT TGAAAAAACA AATTTTAGTG 1699  
 ATGCAATATG TGCTCTTTCC TGTAGTTTCA GCATGTACAT CGGTATGGGA TAAAGTAGAA 1759  
 TAAGCTATTC TGCAAAAGCA GTGATTTTTT TTGAAAAAAA AAAAAAAAAA AA 1811

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:10:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 528 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:10:

Ala Thr Met Ala Thr Ala Thr Val Ala Ala Ala Ser Pro Leu Arg Gly  
 1 5 10 15  
 Arg Val Thr Gly Arg Pro His Arg Val Arg Pro Arg Cys Ala Thr Ala  
 20 25 30  
 Ser Ser Ala Thr Glu Thr Pro Ala Ala Pro Gly Val Arg Leu Ser Ala  
 35 40 45  
 Glu Cys Val Ile Val Gly Ala Gly Ile Ser Gly Leu Cys Thr Ala Gln



50                      55                      60  
 Ala Leu Ala Thr Arg Tyr Gly Val Ser Asp Leu Leu Val Thr Glu Ala  
 65                      70                      75                      80  
 Arg Asp Arg Pro Gly Gly Asn Ile Thr Thr Val Glu Arg Pro Asp Glu  
 85                      90                      95  
 Gly Tyr Leu Trp Glu Glu Gly Pro Asn Ser Phe Gln Pro Ser Asp Pro  
 100                      105                      110  
 Val Leu Thr Met Ala Val Asp Ser Gly Leu Lys Asp Asp Leu Val Phe  
 115                      120                      125  
 Gly Asp Pro Asn Ala Pro Arg Phe Val Leu Trp Glu Gly Lys Leu Arg  
 130                      135                      140  
 Pro Val Pro Ser Lys Pro Gly Asp Leu Pro Phe Phe Ser Leu Met Ser  
 145                      150                      155                      160  
 Ile Pro Gly Lys Leu Arg Ala Gly Leu Gly Ala Leu Gly Ile Arg Pro  
 165                      170                      175  
 Pro Pro Pro Gly Arg Glu Glu Ser Val Glu Glu Phe Val Arg Arg Asn  
 180                      185                      190  
 Leu Gly Ala Glu Val Phe Glu Arg Leu Ile Glu Pro Phe Cys Ser Gly  
 195                      200                      205  
 Val Tyr Ala Gly Asp Pro Ser Lys Leu Ser Met Lys Ala Ala Phe Gly  
 210                      215                      220  
 Lys Val Trp Arg Leu Glu Glu Ile Gly Gly Ser Ile Ile Gly Gly Thr  
 225                      230                      235                      240  
 Ile Lys Ala Ile Gln Asp Lys Gly Lys Asn Pro Lys Pro Pro Arg Asp  
 245                      250                      255  
 Pro Arg Leu Pro Ala Pro Lys Gly Gln Thr Val Ala Ser Phe Arg Lys  
 260                      265                      270  
 Gly Leu Ala Met Leu Pro Asn Ala Ile Ala Ser Arg Leu Gly Ser Lys  
 275                      280                      285  
 Val Lys Leu Ser Trp Lys Leu Thr Ser Ile Thr Lys Ala Asp Asn Gln  
 290                      295                      300  
 Gly Tyr Val Leu Gly Tyr Glu Thr Pro Glu Gly Leu Val Ser Val Gln  
 305                      310                      315                      320  
 Ala Lys Ser Val Ile Met Thr Ile Pro Ser Tyr Val Ala Ser Asp Ile  
 325                      330                      335  
 Leu Arg Pro Leu Ser Ile Asp Ala Ala Asp Ala Leu Ser Lys Phe Tyr  
 340                      345                      350  
 Tyr Pro Pro Val Ala Ala Val Thr Val Ser Tyr Pro Lys Glu Ala Ile  
 355                      360                      365  
 Arg Lys Glu Cys Leu Ile Asp Gly Glu Leu Gln Gly Phe Gly Gln Leu  
 370                      375                      380  
 His Pro Arg Ser Gln Gly Val Glu Thr Leu Gly Thr Ile Tyr Ser Ser  
 385                      390                      395                      400

Ser Leu Phe Pro Asn Arg Ala Pro Ala Gly Arg Val Leu Leu Leu Asn  
405 410 415  
Tyr Ile Gly Gly Ser Thr Asn Thr Gly Ile Val Ser Lys Thr Glu Ser  
420 425 430  
Asp Leu Val Gly Ala Val Asp Arg Asp Leu Arg Lys Met Leu Ile Asn  
435 440 445  
Pro Arg Ala Ala Asp Pro Leu Ala Leu Gly Val Arg Val Trp Pro Gln  
450 455 460  
Ala Ile Pro Gln Phe Leu Ile Gly His Leu Asp Arg Leu Ala Ala Ala  
465 470 475 480  
Lys Ser Ala Leu Gly Gln Gly Gly Tyr Asp Gly Leu Phe Leu Gly Gly  
485 490 495  
Asn Tyr Val Ala Gly Val Ala Leu Gly Arg Cys Ile Glu Gly Ala Tyr  
500 505 510  
Glu Ser Ala Ser Gln Val Ser Asp Phe Leu Thr Lys Tyr Ala Tyr Lys  
515 520 525

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:11:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
  - (A) LENGTH: 1847 base pairs
  - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
  - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
  - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA
- (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO
- (vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:
  - (A) ORGANISM: soybean
- (vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:
  - (B) CLONE: pWDC-12 (NRRL B-21516)
- (ix) FEATURE:
  - (A) NAME/KEY: CDS
  - (B) LOCATION: 55..1683
  - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /product= "soybean protox-1"
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:11:

CTTTAGCACA GTGTTGAAGA TAACGAACGA ATAGTGCCAT TACTGTAACC AACC ATG	57
Met	
1	
GTT TCC GTC TTC AAC GAG ATC CTA TTC CCG CCG AAC CAA ACC CTT CTT	105
Val Ser Val Phe Asn Glu Ile Leu Phe Pro Pro Asn Gln Thr Leu Leu	
5 10 15	
CGC CCC TCC CTC CAT TCC CCA ACC TCT TTC TTC ACC TCT CCC ACT CGA	153
Arg Pro Ser Leu His Ser Pro Thr Ser Phe Phe Thr Ser Pro Thr Arg	
20 25 30	
AAA TTC CCT CGC TCT CGC CCT AAC CCT ATT CTA CGC TGC TCC ATT GCG	201
Lys Phe Pro Arg Ser Arg Pro Asn Pro Ile Leu Arg Cys Ser Ile Ala	

151

TTA TCT TGG AAG CTT TCA AGT ATT AGT AAA CTG GAT AGT GGA GAG TAC	1017
Leu Ser Trp Lys Leu Ser Ser Ile Ser Lys Leu Asp Ser Gly Glu Tyr	
310 315 320	
AGT TTG ACA TAT GAA ACA CCA GAA GGA GTG GTT TCT TTG CAG TGC AAA	1065
Ser Leu Thr Tyr Glu Thr Pro Glu Gly Val Val Ser Leu Gln Cys Lys	
325 330 335	
ACT GTT GTC CTG ACC ATT CCT TCC TAT GTT GCT AGT ACA TTG CTG CGT	1113
Thr Val Val Leu Thr Ile Pro Ser Tyr Val Ala Ser Thr Leu Leu Arg	
340 345 350	
CCT CTG TCT GCT GCT GCT GCA GAT GCA CTT TCA AAG TTT TAT TAC CCT	1161
Pro Leu Ser Ala Ala Ala Ala Asp Ala Leu Ser Lys Phe Tyr Tyr Pro	
355 360 365	
CCA GTT GCT GCA GTT TCC ATA TCC TAT CCA AAA GAA GCT ATT AGA TCA	1209
Pro Val Ala Ala Val Ser Ile Ser Tyr Pro Lys Glu Ala Ile Arg Ser	
370 375 380 385	
GAA TGC TTG ATA GAT GGT GAG TTG AAG GGG TTT GGT CAA TTG CAT CCA	1257
Glu Cys Leu Ile Asp Gly Glu Leu Lys Gly Phe Gly Gln Leu His Pro	
390 395 400	
CGT AGC CAA GGA GTG GAA ACA TTA GGA ACT ATA TAC AGC TCA TCA CTA	1305
Arg Ser Gln Gly Val Glu Thr Leu Gly Thr Ile Tyr Ser Ser Ser Leu	
405 410 415	
TTC CCC AAC CGA GCA CCA CCT GGA AGG GTT CTA CTC TTG AAT TAC ATT	1353
Phe Pro Asn Arg Ala Pro Pro Gly Arg Val Leu Leu Leu Asn Tyr Ile	
420 425 430	
GGA GGA GCA ACT AAT ACT GGA ATT TTA TCG AAG ACG GAC AGT GAA CTT	1401
Gly Gly Ala Thr Asn Thr Gly Ile Leu Ser Lys Thr Asp Ser Glu Leu	
435 440 445	
GTG GAA ACA GTT GAT CGA GAT TTG AGG AAA ATC CTT ATA AAC CCA AAT	1449
Val Glu Thr Val Asp Arg Asp Leu Arg Lys Ile Leu Ile Asn Pro Asn	
450 455 460 465	
GCC CAG GAT CCA TTT GTA GTG GGG GTG AGA CTG TGG CCT CAA GCT ATT	1497
Ala Gln Asp Pro Phe Val Val Gly Val Arg Leu Trp Pro Gln Ala Ile	
470 475 480	
CCA CAG TTC TTA GTT GGC CAT CTT GAT CTT CTA GAT GTT GCT AAA GCT	1545
Pro Gln Phe Leu Val Gly His Leu Asp Leu Leu Asp Val Ala Lys Ala	
485 490 495	
TCT ATC AGA AAT ACT GGG TTT GAA GGG CTC TTC CTT GGG GGT AAT TAT	1593
Ser Ile Arg Asn Thr Gly Phe Glu Gly Leu Phe Leu Gly Gly Asn Tyr	
500 505 510	
GTG TCT GGT GTT GCC TTG GGA CGA TGC GTT GAG GGA GCC TAT GAG GTA	1641
Val Ser Gly Val Ala Leu Gly Arg Cys Val Glu Gly Ala Tyr Glu Val	
515 520 525	
GCA GCT GAA GTA AAC GAT TTT CTC ACA AAT AGA GTG TAC AAA	1683
Ala Ala Glu Val Asn Asp Phe Leu Thr Asn Arg Val Tyr Lys	
530 535 540	
TAGTAGCAGT TTTTGTTTTT GTGGTGAAT GGGTGATGGG ACTCTCGTGT TCCATTGAAT	1743
TATAATAATG TGAAAGTTTC TCAAATTCGT TCGATAGGTT TTTGGCGGCT TCTATTGCTG	1803

1847

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 543 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:12:

153

Arg Leu Pro Lys Pro Lys Gly Gln Thr Val Gly Ser Phe Arg Lys Gly  
 275 280 285  
 Leu Thr Met Leu Pro Asp Ala Ile Ser Ala Arg Leu Gly Asn Lys Val  
 290 295 300  
 Lys Leu Ser Trp Lys Leu Ser Ser Ile Ser Lys Leu Asp Ser Gly Glu  
 305 310 315 320  
 Tyr Ser Leu Thr Tyr Glu Thr Pro Glu Gly Val Val Ser Leu Gln Cys  
 325 330 335  
 Lys Thr Val Val Leu Thr Ile Pro Ser Tyr Val Ala Ser Thr Leu Leu  
 340 345 350  
 Arg Pro Leu Ser Ala Ala Ala Ala Asp Ala Leu Ser Lys Phe Tyr Tyr  
 355 360 365  
 Pro Pro Val Ala Ala Val Ser Ile Ser Tyr Pro Lys Glu Ala Ile Arg  
 370 375 380  
 Ser Glu Cys Leu Ile Asp Gly Glu Leu Lys Gly Phe Gly Gln Leu His  
 385 390 395 400  
 Pro Arg Ser Gln Gly Val Glu Thr Leu Gly Thr Ile Tyr Ser Ser Ser  
 405 410 415  
 Leu Phe Pro Asn Arg Ala Pro Pro Gly Arg Val Leu Leu Leu Asn Tyr  
 420 425 430  
 Ile Gly Gly Ala Thr Asn Thr Gly Ile Leu Ser Lys Thr Asp Ser Glu  
 435 440 445  
 Leu Val Glu Thr Val Asp Arg Asp Leu Arg Lys Ile Leu Ile Asn Pro  
 450 455 460  
 Asn Ala Gln Asp Pro Phe Val Val Gly Val Arg Leu Trp Pro Gln Ala  
 465 470 475 480  
 Ile Pro Gln Phe Leu Val Gly His Leu Asp Leu Leu Asp Val Ala Lys  
 485 490 495  
 Ala Ser Ile Arg Asn Thr Gly Phe Glu Gly Leu Phe Leu Gly Gly Asn  
 500 505 510  
 Tyr Val Ser Gly Val Ala Leu Gly Arg Cys Val Glu Gly Ala Tyr Glu  
 515 520 525  
 Val Ala Ala Glu Val Asn Asp Phe Leu Thr Asn Arg Val Tyr Lys  
 530 535 540

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:13:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 583 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: DNA (genomic)

## (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

## (ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: promoter

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEO ID NO:13:

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:14:

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: /function= "maize protox-1 promoter"

P:\ABR\1800A\1847CIP4\1847CIP4.DOC

CTTCTGCCAC GACGTGATAG TCCCTGGCCG AAGAGAAGAA TACCATGTTT GGGCTACATT 600  
 CCGGACTGCC ATGACGAAGG ACTTCGCCAT GACTACAGTG TTGACCCCAT ACGAAGATAT 660  
 AGTTGCTTCG TAGCTCATCA GAAACTGCTT TGGATCTGAG TGCCCATCAT ACATGGGGAG 720  
 CTGAGGTGGC TTGTATGATG GGGGCCATGG GGTAGCCTGC AGTTCTGCTG CCAAGGGAGA 780  
 AGCATCATCA AAAGTAAAGG CATCATGATT AAAATCATCA TACCATCCAT CCTCGTTGAA 840  
 TAAGCCTTCT TGACGAAGCT CCCTGTGTTG GGGCCTTCGA TCTTGTTTCA CTTGAACAAG 900  
 ATGACGCACT TCTTCAGTGG CTTCGTCGAT CTTTCTTTGG AGATCAGCCA GTCGCACCAT 960  
 CTTCTCCTTC TTTCTTTGTA CTTGTTGATG GATGATCTCC ATGTCCCTGA TCTCTTGGTC 1020  
 CAACTCCTCC TCTTGAGGTG TCAGACTGGT GGCTTTCTCT TCTGGGCTTC GAGCCTCTCG 1080  
 AAGAGAAAGA GTTTCTTGAT TTGGGTCCAG CGGCTGCAGT GCAGTGGTCC CTGGTGCTGA 1140  
 AGCTTTCTTC GGTGGCATGA CAAAGGTCAG TGCTTGCCGA AGGTGGTCGA AAAGGGTTCA 1200  
 CTAGAGGTGG GAGCCAATGT TGGGGACTTC TCAAGTGCTA TGAGTTAAGA ACAAGGCAAC 1260  
 ACAAAATGTT AAATATTAAT AGCTTTCATC TTTCGAAGCA TTATTTCCCT TTGGGTATAA 1320  
 TGATCTTCAG ACGAAAGAGT CCTTCATCAT TGCGATATAT GTTAATAGAA GGAGGAGCAT 1380  
 ATGAAATGTA AGAGACAACA TGAACAATCG TGTAGCATTG TTAATTCATC ATCATTTTAT 1440  
 TATTATGGAA AAATAGAAAC AATATTGAAT TACAAATGTA CCTTTGGCTT GACAGAAGAT 1500  
 AAAAGTACAA GCTTGACGCA CGAGCAAGTA CAAGTCAGTG TGAACAGTAC GGGGGTACTG 1560  
 TTCATCTATT TATAGGCACA GGACACAGCC TGTGAGAAAT TACAGTCATG CCCTTTACAT 1620  
 TTAATATTGA CTTATAGAAA AATCTATGAG GACTGGATAG CCTTTTCCCC TTTAAGTCGG 1680  
 TGCCTTTTTT CGCGATTAAG CCGAATCTCC CTTGCGCATA GCTTCGGAGC ATCGGCAACC 1740  
 TTCGTCACGA TCATGCCCTT CTCATTGTGT ATGCTTTTAA TCCTGAATTC GAAGGTACCT 1800  
 GTCCATAAAC CATACTTGA AGACATTGTT AAATTATGTT TTTGAGGACC TTCGGAGGAC 1860  
 GAAGGCCCCC AACAGTCGTG TTTTGTAGGA CCTTCGGAAG ATGAAGGCCC CCAACAAGAC 1920  
 CTATCCATAA AACCAACCTA TCCACAAAAC CGACCCCAT CACCCTTCAT TTGCCTCACC 1980  
 AACAAACCTA ATTAGGTTGT TGGTTTAAAT TTTTGTAGGT CAATTTGGTC ATCACCATCC 2040  
 ACTGTCACTC CACAACTCA ATATCAATAA ACAGACTCAA TCACCCAAAC TGACCATAAC 2100  
 CATAAAACCG CCCCACCTT CTAGCGCCTC GCCAGAAACC AGAAACCCTG ATTCAGAGTT 2160  
 CAAACTTAAA ACGACCATAA CTTTCACCTT GGAACTCGAA TCAGGTCCAT TTTTTCCTAA 2220  
 ATCACACAAA ATTAAATTTT GCATCCGATA ATCAAGCCAT CTCTTCACTA TGGTTTAAAG 2280  
 TGGTTGCTCAC ACTAGTGTAT TTATGGACTA ATCACCTGTG TATCTCATAC AATAACATAT 2340  
 CAGTACATCT AAGTTGTTAC TCAATTACCA AAACCGAATT ATAGCCTTCG AAAAAGGTTA 2400  
 TCGACTAGTC ACTCAATTAC CAAAATAAA CTTTAGACTT TCATGTATGA CATCCAACAT 2460



GACACTGTAC TGGACTAAAC CACCTTTCAA GCTACACAAG GAGCAAAAAT AACTAATTTT 2520  
 CGTAGTTGTA GGAGCTAAAG TATATGTCCA CAACAATAGT TAAGGGAAGC CCCCAGGAC 2580  
 TTAAAAGTCC TTTTACCTCT TGAAACTTTT GTCGTGGTCT ACTTTTTCAC TTTAAACTTC 2640  
 AAAATTTGAC ATTTTATCAC CCCTTAACTC TTAAAACCAT TTAAATTACA TTCTTACTAG 2700  
 ATTATAGATG ATTTTGTTGT GAAAAGTTTT TAAGACATGT TTACACATTG ATTAAAATCA 2760  
 TTTGTTCAAT TTCCTAGAGT TAAATCTAAT CTTATTAAAA CTATTAGAGA TACTTTCACG 2820  
 AGCTCTAAAT ATTTTTATTT TTTTATTATG GAATTTTGTT AGAATTCTTA TAGACCTTTT 2880  
 TTTGTGGTTT AAAAGCCTTG CCATGTTTTT AACAGTTTTT TTTTCTATTT TTTGAAATTT 2940  
 TCTTGGAAC CACTTCTAAC CCGGTAGAAG ATTTATTTTG CTACACTTAT ATCTACAACA 3000  
 AAATCAACTT ATGAAATTGT CTTGGAACT ACCTCTAACC CGGTAGAATG AATTTGAATG 3060  
 AAAATTAAAC CAACTTACGG AATCGCCCAA CATATGTCGA TTAAAGTGGA TATGGATACA 3120  
 TATGAAGAAG CCCTAGAGAT AATCTAAATG GTTTCAGAAT TGAGGGTTAT TTTTGAAGT 3180  
 TTGATGGGAA GATAAGACCA TAACGGTAGT TCACAGAGAT AAAAGGGTTA TTTTTTTCAG 3240  
 AAATATTTGT GCTGCAATTG ATCCTGTGCC TCAAATTCAG CCTGCAACCA AGGCCAGGTT 3300  
 CTAGAGCGAA CAAGGCCAC GTCACCCGTG GCCCGTCAGG CGAAGCAGGT CTTGTGCAGA 3360  
 CTTTGAGAGG GATTGGATAT CAACGGAACC AATCACGCAC GGCAATGCGA TTCCCAGCCC 3420  
 ACCTGTAACG TTCCAGTGGG CCATCCTTAA CTCCAAGCCC AACGGCCCTA CCCCATCTCG 3480  
 TCGTGTATC CACTCCGCCG CACAGGCGCT CAGTCCGCA ACGCCGCCGG AAATGGTCGC 3540  
 CGCCACAGCC ACCGCCATGG CCACCGCTGC ATCGCCGCTA CTCAACGGGA CCCGAATACC 3600  
 TGC GCGGCTC CGCCATCGAG GACTCAGCGT GCGTGTGCGT GCTGTGGCGG GCGGCGCGGC 3660  
 CGAGGCACCG GCATCCACCG GCGCGCGGCT GTCCGCGGAC TGCGTTGTGG TGGGCGGAGG 3720  
 CATCAGTGGC CTCTGCACCG CGCAGGCGCT GGCCACGCGG CACGGCGTCG GGGACGTGCT 3780  
 TGTCACGGAG GCCCGCGCCC GCCCGGCGG CAACATTACC ACCGTCGAGC GCCCGAGGA 3840  
 AGGGTACC 3848

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:15:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 1826 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

## (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

## (iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO

## (vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: *Gossypium hirsutum* (cotton)

(B) CLONE: pWDC-15 (NRRL B-21594)

(A) NAME/KEY: misc feature

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: /product= "Cotton protox-1 coding

sequence"

CCTCTCGCTC	GCCTGGCCCC	ACCACCAATC	ATGACGGCTC	TAATCGACCT	TTCTCTTCTC	60
CGTTCCCTCGC	CCTCCGTTTC	CCCTTTCTCC	ATACCCACC	ACCAGCATCC	GCCCCGCTTT	120
CGTAAACCTT	TCAAGCTCCG	ATGCTCCCTC	GCCGAGGGTC	CCACGATTTC	CTCATCTAAA	180
ATCGACGGGG	GAGAATCATC	CATCGCGGAT	TGCGTCATCG	TTGGAGGTGG	TATCAGTGGA	240
CTTTGCATTG	CTCAAGCTCT	CGCCACCAAG	CACCGTGACG	TCGCTTCCAA	TGTGATTGTG	300
ACGGAGGCCA	GAGACCGTGT	TGGTGGCAAC	ATCACTACCG	TTGAGAGAGA	TGGATATCTG	360
TGGGAAGAAG	GCCCCAACAG	TTTTCAGCCC	TCCGATCCTA	TTCTAACCAT	GGCCGTGGAT	420
AGTGGATTGA	AGGACGATTT	GGTTTTAGGT	GACCCTAATG	CACCGCGATT	TGTACTATGG	480
GAGGGAAAAC	TAAGGCCTGT	GCCCTCCAAG	CCAACCGACT	TGCCGTTTTT	TGATTTGATG	540
AGCATTGCTG	GAAAACCTTAG	GGCTGGGTTC	GGGGCTATTG	GCATTCGGCC	TCCCCCTCCG	600
GGTTATGAAG	AATCGGTGGA	GGAGTTTGTG	CGCCGTAATC	TTGGTGCTGA	GGTTTTTGAA	660
CGCTTTATTG	AACCATTTTTG	TTCAGGTGTT	TATGCAGGGG	ATCCTTCAAA	ATTAAGCATG	720
AAAGCAGCAT	TTGGAAGAGT	ATGGAAGCTA	GAAGAGATTG	GTGGCAGCAT	CATTGGTGGC	780
ACTTTCAAGA	CAATCCAGGA	GAGAAATAAG	ACACCTAAGC	CACCCAGAGA	CCCGCGTCTG	840
CCAAAACCGA	AGGGCCAAAC	AGTTGGATCT	TTTAGGAAGG	GACTTACCAT	GCTGCCTGAG	900
GCAATTGCTA	ACAGTTTGGG	TAGCAATGTA	AAATTATCTT	GGAAGCTTTC	CAGTATTACC	960
AAATTGGGCA	ATGGAGGGTA	TAACTTGACA	TTTGAAACAC	CTGAAGGAAT	GGTATCTCTT	1020
CAGAGTAGAA	GTGTTGTAAT	GACCATTCCA	TCCCATGTTG	CCAGTAACTT	GTTGCATCCT	1080
CTCTCGGCTG	CTGCTGCAGA	TGCATTATCC	CAATTTTATT	ATCCTCCAGT	TGCATCAGTC	1140
ACAGTCTCCT	ATCCAAAAGA	AGCCATTCTG	AAAGAATGTT	TGATTGATGG	TGAACTTAAG	1200
GGGTTTGGCC	AGTTGCACCC	ACGCAGCCAA	GGAATTGAAA	CTTTAGGGAC	GATATACAGT	1260
TCATCACTTT	TCCCCAATCG	AGCTCCATCT	GGCAGGGTGT	TGCTCTTGAA	CTACATAGGA	1320
GGAGCTACCA	AACTTGAAT	TTTGTTCCAAG	ACTGAAGGGG	AACTTGTAGA	AGCAGTTGAT	1380
CGTGATTTGA	GAAAAATGCT	TATAAATCCT	AATGCAAAGG	ATCCTCTTGT	TTTGGGTGTA	1440
AGAGTATGGC	CAAAAGCCAT	TCCACAGTTC	TTGGTTGGTC	ATTTGGATCT	CCTTGATAGT	1500
GCAAAAATGG	CTCTCAGGGA	TTCTGGGTTT	CATGGACTGT	TTCTTGGGGG	CAACTATGTA	1560

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:16:

(A) LENGTH: 539 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
(D) TOPOLOGY: not relevant

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:16:

P:\ABRU\1800A\1847CIP4\1847CIP4.DOC

210	215	220
Pro Ser Lys Leu Ser Met Lys Ala Ala Phe Gly Arg Val Trp Lys Leu	230	235 240
Glu Glu Ile Gly Gly Ser Ile Ile Gly Gly Thr Phe Lys Thr Ile Gln	245	250 255
Glu Arg Asn Lys Thr Pro Lys Pro Pro Arg Asp Pro Arg Leu Pro Lys	260	265 270
Pro Lys Gly Gln Thr Val Gly Ser Phe Arg Lys Gly Leu Thr Met Leu	275	280 285
Pro Glu Ala Ile Ala Asn Ser Leu Gly Ser Asn Val Lys Leu Ser Trp	290	295 300
Lys Leu Ser Ser Ile Thr Lys Leu Gly Asn Gly Gly Tyr Asn Leu Thr	305	310 315 320
Phe Glu Thr Pro Glu Gly Met Val Ser Leu Gln Ser Arg Ser Val Val	325	330 335
Met Thr Ile Pro Ser His Val Ala Ser Asn Leu Leu His Pro Leu Ser	340	345 350
Ala Ala Ala Ala Asp Ala Leu Ser Gln Phe Tyr Tyr Pro Pro Val Ala	355	360 365
Ser Val Thr Val Ser Tyr Pro Lys Glu Ala Ile Arg Lys Glu Cys Leu	370	375 380
Ile Asp Gly Glu Leu Lys Gly Phe Gly Gln Leu His Pro Arg Ser Gln	385	390 395 400
Gly Ile Glu Thr Leu Gly Thr Ile Tyr Ser Ser Ser Leu Phe Pro Asn	405	410 415
Arg Ala Pro Ser Gly Arg Val Leu Leu Leu Asn Tyr Ile Gly Gly Ala	420	425 430
Thr Asn Thr Gly Ile Leu Ser Lys Thr Glu Gly Glu Leu Val Glu Ala	435	440 445
Val Asp Arg Asp Leu Arg Lys Met Leu Ile Asn Pro Asn Ala Lys Asp	450	455 460
Pro Leu Val Leu Gly Val Arg Val Trp Pro Lys Ala Ile Pro Gln Phe	465	470 475 480
Leu Val Gly His Leu Asp Leu Leu Asp Ser Ala Lys Met Ala Leu Arg	485	490 495
Asp Ser Gly Phe His Gly Leu Phe Leu Gly Gly Asn Tyr Val Ser Gly	500	505 510
Val Ala Leu Gly Arg Cys Val Glu Gly Ala Tyr Glu Val Ala Ala Glu	515	520 525
Val Lys Glu Phe Leu Ser Gln Tyr Ala Tyr Lys	530	535

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:17:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 1910 base pairs  
 (B) TYPE: nucleic acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Beta vulgaris (Sugar Beet)

(vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:

(B) CLONE: pWDC-16 (NRRL B-21595N)

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: misc\_feature

(B) LOCATION: 1..1680

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: /product= "Sugar Beet protox-1 coding sequence"

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:17:

ATGAAATCAA TGGCGTTATC AAACGTCATT CCACAGACAC AGTGCATGCC ATTGCGCAGC	60
AGCGGGCATT ACAGGGGTAA TTGTATCATG TTGTCAATTC CATGTAGTTT AATTGGAAGA	120
CGAGGTTATT ATTCACATAA GAAGAGGAGG ATGAGCATGA GTTGCAGCAC AAGCTCAGGC	180
TCAAAGTCAG CGGTTAAAGA AGCAGGATCA GGATCAGGTG CAGGAGGATT GCTAGACTGC	240
GTAATCGTTG GAGGTGGAAT TAGCGGGCTT TGCATCGCGC AGGCTCTTTG TACAAAACAC	300
TCCTCTTCCT CTTTATCCCC AAATTTTATA GTTACAGAGG CCAAAGACAG AGTTGGCGGC	360
AACATCGTCA CTGTGGAGGC CGATGGCTAT ATCTGGGAGG AGGGACCCAA TAGCTTCCAG	420
CCTTCCGACG CGGTGCTCAC CATGGCGGTC GACAGTGGCT TGAAAGATGA GTTGGTGCTC	480
GGAGATCCCA ATGCTCCTCG CTTTGTGCTA TGGAATGACA AATTAAGGCC CGTACCTTCC	540
AGTCTCACCG ACCTCCCTTT CTTGACCTC ATGACCATTG CGGGCAAGAT TAGGGCTGCT	600
CTTGGTGCTC TCGGATTTG CCCTTCTCCT CCACCTCATG AGGAATCTGT TGAACACTTT	660
GTGCGTCGTA ATCTCGGAGA TGAGGTCTTT GAACGCTTGA TTGAACCCTT TTGTTTCAGGT	720
GTGTATGCCG GTGATCCTGC CAAGCTGAGT ATGAAAGCTG CTTTTGGGAA GGTCTGGAAG	780
TTGGAGCAAA AGGGTGGCAG CATAATTGGT GGCACCTCTCA AAGCTATACA GGAAAGAGGG	840
AGTAATCCTA AGCCGCCCCG TGACCAGCGC CTCCCTAAAC CAAAGGGTCA GACTGTTGGA	900
TCCTTTAGAA AGGGACTCGT TATGTTGCCT ACCGCCATTT CTGCTCGACT TGGCAGTAGA	960
GTGAAACTAT CTTGGACCCCT TTCTAGTATC GTAAAGTCAC TCAATGGAGA ATATAGTCTG	1020
ACTTATGATA CCCAGATGG CTTGGTTTCT GTAAGAACCA AAAGTGTGTG GATGACTGTT	1080
CCATCATATG TTGCAAGTAG GCTTCTTCGT CCACTTTCAG ACTCTGCTGC AGATTCTCTT	1140
TCAAAATTTT ACTATCCACC AGTTGCAGCA GTGTCACTTT CCTATCCTAA AGAAGCGATC	1200

AGATCAGAAT GCTTGATTAA TGGTGAAC TT CAAGGTTTCG GGCAACTACA TCCCCGCAGT 1260  
 CAGGGTGTGG AAACCTTGGG AACAAATTTAT AGTTCGTCTC TTTTCCCTGG TCGAGCACCA 1320  
 CCTGGTAGGA TCTTGATCTT GAGCTACATC GGAGGTGCTA AAAATCCTGG CATATTAAAC 1380  
 AAGTCGAAAG ATGAACTTGC CAAGACAGTT GACAAGGACC TGAGAAGAAT GCTTATAAAT 1440  
 CCTGATGCAA AACTTCCTCG TGTACTGGGT GTGAGAGTAT GGCCTCAAGC AATACCCCAG 1500  
 TTTTCTATTG GGCAC TTTGA TCTGCTCGAT GCTGCAAAAG CTGCTCTGAC AGATACAGGG 1560  
 GTCAAAGGAC TGTTTCTTGG TGGCAACTAT GTTTCAGGTG TTGCCTTGGG GCGGTGTATA 1620  
 GAGGGTGCTT ATGAGTCTGC AGCTGAGGTA GTAGATTTCC TCTCACAGTA CTCAGACAAA 1680  
 TAGAGCTTCA GCATCCTGTG TAATTCAACA CAGGCCTTTT TGTATCTGTT GTGCGCGCAT 1740  
 GTAGTCTGGT CGTGGTGCTA GGATTGATTA GTTGCTCTGC TGTGTGATCC ACAAGAATTT 1800  
 TGATGGAATT TTTCCAGATG TGGGCATTAT ATGTTGCTGT CTTATAAATC CTTAATTTGT 1860  
 ACGTTTAGTG AATTACACCG CATTTGATGA CTAAAAAAA AAAAAAAA 1910

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:18:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 560 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant
- (D) TOPOLOGY: not relevant

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:18:

Met Lys Ser Met Ala Leu Ser Asn Cys Ile Pro Gln Thr Gln Cys Met  
 1 5 10 15  
 Pro Leu Arg Ser Ser Gly His Tyr Arg Gly Asn Cys Ile Met Leu Ser  
 20 25 30  
 Ile Pro Cys Ser Leu Ile Gly Arg Arg Gly Tyr Tyr Ser His Lys Lys  
 35 40 45  
 Arg Arg Met Ser Met Ser Cys Ser Thr Ser Ser Gly Ser Lys Ser Ala  
 50 55 60  
 Val Lys Glu Ala Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Ala Gly Gly Leu Leu Asp Cys  
 65 70 75 80  
 Val Ile Val Gly Gly Gly Ile Ser Gly Leu Cys Ile Ala Gln Ala Leu  
 85 90 95  
 Cys Thr Lys His Ser Ser Ser Ser Leu Ser Pro Asn Phe Ile Val Thr  
 100 105 110  
 Glu Ala Lys Asp Arg Val Gly Gly Asn Ile Val Thr Val Glu Ala Asp  
 115 120 125  
 Gly Tyr Ile Trp Glu Glu Gly Pro Asn Ser Phe Gln Pro Ser Asp Ala

130	135	140
Val Leu Thr Met Ala	Val Asp Ser Gly Leu Lys Asp Glu Leu Val Leu	
145	150	155
Gly Asp Pro Asn Ala	Pro Arg Phe Val Leu Trp Asn Asp Lys Leu Arg	
	165	170
Pro Val Pro Ser Ser Leu Thr Asp Leu Pro Phe Phe Asp Leu Met Thr		
	180	185
Ile Pro Gly Lys Ile Arg Ala Ala Leu Gly Ala Leu Gly Phe Arg Pro		
	195	200
Ser Pro Pro Pro His Glu Glu Ser Val Glu His Phe Val Arg Arg Asn		
	210	215
Leu Gly Asp Glu Val Phe Glu Arg Leu Ile Glu Pro Phe Cys Ser Gly		
	225	230
Val Tyr Ala Gly Asp Pro Ala Lys Leu Ser Met Lys Ala Ala Phe Gly		
	245	250
Lys Val Trp Lys Leu Glu Gln Lys Gly Gly Ser Ile Ile Gly Gly Thr		
	260	265
Leu Lys Ala Ile Gln Glu Arg Gly Ser Asn Pro Lys Pro Pro Arg Asp		
	275	280
Gln Arg Leu Pro Lys Pro Lys Gly Gln Thr Val Gly Ser Phe Arg Lys		
	290	295
Gly Leu Val Met Leu Pro Thr Ala Ile Ser Ala Arg Leu Gly Ser Arg		
	305	310
Val Lys Leu Ser Trp Thr Leu Ser Ser Ile Val Lys Ser Leu Asn Gly		
	325	330
Glu Tyr Ser Leu Thr Tyr Asp Thr Pro Asp Gly Leu Val Ser Val Arg		
	340	345
Thr Lys Ser Val Val Met Thr Val Pro Ser Tyr Val Ala Ser Arg Leu		
	355	360
Leu Arg Pro Leu Ser Asp Ser Ala Ala Asp Ser Leu Ser Lys Phe Tyr		
	370	375
Tyr Pro Pro Val Ala Ala Val Ser Leu Ser Tyr Pro Lys Glu Ala Ile		
	385	390
Arg Ser Glu Cys Leu Ile Asn Gly Glu Leu Gln Gly Phe Gly Gln Leu		
	405	410
His Pro Arg Ser Gln Gly Val Glu Thr Leu Gly Thr Ile Tyr Ser Ser		
	420	425
Ser Leu Phe Pro Gly Arg Ala Pro Pro Gly Arg Ile Leu Ile Leu Ser		
	435	440
Tyr Ile Gly Gly Ala Lys Asn Pro Gly Ile Leu Asn Lys Ser Lys Asp		
	450	455
Glu Leu Ala Lys Thr Val Asp Lys Asp Leu Arg Arg Met Leu Ile Asn		
	465	470
		475
		480

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:19:

(A) LENGTH: 1784 base pairs  
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:

(ix) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY: misc\_feature

(B) LOCATION: 47..1654

(D) OTHER INFORMATION: /product= "Oilseed rape protox-1 coding sequence"

GGGCCCCCCC	CAAAATTGAG	GATTCTCCTT	CTCGCGGGCG	ATCGCCATGG	ATTTATCTCT	60
TCTCCGTCCG	CAGCCATTCC	TATCGCCATT	CTCAAATCCA	TTTCTCGGT	CGCGTCCCTA	120
CAAGCCTCTC	AACCTCCGTT	GCTCCGTATC	CGGTGGATCC	GTCGTCGGCT	CTTCTACAAT	180
CGAAGGCGGA	GGAGGAGGTA	AAACCGTCAC	GGCGGACTGC	GTGATCGTCG	GCGGAGGAAT	240
CAGCGGCCCTG	TGCATTGCGC	AAGCGCTCGT	GACGAAGCAC	CCAGACGCTG	CAAAGAATGT	300
GATGGTGACG	GAGGCGAAGG	ACCGTGTGGG	AGGGAATATC	ATCACGCGAG	AGGAGCAAGG	360
GTTTCTATGG	GAAGAAGGTC	CCAATAGCTT	TCAGCCGTCT	GATCCTATGC	TCACTATGGT	420
GGTAGATAGT	GGTTTGAAAG	ATGATCTAGT	CTTGGGAGAT	CCTACTGCTC	CGAGGTTTGT	480
GTTGTGGAAT	GGGAAGCTGA	GGCCGGTTCC	GTCGAAGCTA	ACTGACTTGC	CTTTCTTTGA	540
CTTGATGAGT	ATTGGAGGGA	AGATTAGAGC	TGGGTTTGGT	GCCATTGGTA	TTCGACCTTC	600



ACCTCCGGGT CGTGAGGAAT CAGTGGAAGA GTTTGTAAGG CGTAATCTTG GTGATGAGGT 660  
 TTTTGAGCGC TTGATTGAAC CCTTTTGCTC AGGTGTTTAT GCGGGAGATC CTGCGAAACT 720  
 GAGTATGAAA GCAGCTTTTG GGAAGGTTTG GAAGCTAGAG GAGAATGGTG GGAGCATCAT 780  
 TGGTGGTGCT TTTAAGGCAA TTCAAGCGAA AAATAAAGCT CCCAAGACAA CCCGAGATCC 840  
 GCGTCTGCCA AAGCCAAAGG GCCAAACTGT TGGTCTTTC AGGAAAGGAC TCACAATGCT 900  
 GCCAGAGGCA ATCTCCGCAA GGTGGGTGA CAAGGTGAAA GTTTCTTGGA AGCTCTCAAG 960  
 TATCACTAAG CTGGCCAGCG GAGAATATAG CTTAACTTAC GAAACTCCGG AGGGTATAGT 1020  
 CACTGTACAG AGCAAAAGTG TAGTGATGAC TGTGCCATCT CATGTTGCTA GTAGTCTCTT 1080  
 GCGCCCTCTC TCTGATTCTG CAGCTGAAGC GCTCTCAAAA CTCTACTATC CGCCAGTTGC 1140  
 AGCCGTATCC ATCTCATACG CGAAAGAAGC AATCCGAAGC GAATGCTTAA TAGATGGTGA 1200  
 ACTAAAAGGG TTCGGCCAGT TGCATCCACG CACGCAAAAA GTGGAAACTC TTGGAACAAT 1260  
 ATACAGTTCA TCGCTCTTTC CCAACCGAGC ACCGCCTGGA AGAGTATTGC TATTGAACTA 1320  
 CATCGGTGGA GCTACCAACA CTGGGATCTT ATCAAAGTCG GAAGGTGAGT TAGTGGAAGC 1380  
 AGTAGATAGA GACTTGAGGA AGATGCTGAT AAAGCCAAGC TCGACCGATC CACTTGTAAT 1440  
 TGGAGTAAAA TTATGGCCTC AAGCCATTCC TCAGTTTCTG ATAGGTCACA TTGATTTGGT 1500  
 AGACGCAGCG AAAGCATCGC TCTCGTCATC TGGTCATGAG GGCTTATTCT TGGGTGGAAA 1560  
 TTACGTTGCC GGTGTAGCAT TGGGTCGGTG TGTGGAAGGT GCTTATGAAA CTGCAACCCA 1620  
 AGTGAATGAT TTCATGTCAA GGTATGCTTA CAAGTAATGT AACGCAGCAA CGATTTGATA 1680  
 CTAAGTAGTA GATTTTGCAG TTTTGAATTT AAGAACACTC TGTGTTGTGAA AAATTCAAGT 1740  
 CTGTGATTGA GTAAATTTAT GTATTATTAC TAAAAA AAAA 1784

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:20:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 536 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant
- (D) TOPOLOGY: not relevant

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:20:

Met Asp Leu Ser Leu Leu Arg Pro Gln Pro Phe Leu Ser Pro Phe Ser  
 1 5 10 15  
 Asn Pro Phe Pro Arg Ser Arg Pro Tyr Lys Pro Leu Asn Leu Arg Cys  
 20 25 30  
 Ser Val Ser Gly Gly Ser Val Val Gly Ser Ser Thr Ile Glu Gly Gly  
 35 40 45  
 Gly Gly Gly Lys Thr Val Thr Ala Asp Cys Val Ile Val Gly Gly Gly

50                      55                      60  
 Ile Ser Gly Leu Cys Ile Ala Gln Ala Leu Val Thr Lys His Pro Asp  
 65                                      70                                      75                                      80  
 Ala Ala Lys Asn Val Met Val Thr Glu Ala Lys Asp Arg Val Gly Gly  
                                     85                                      90                                      95  
 Asn Ile Ile Thr Arg Glu Glu Gln Gly Phe Leu Trp Glu Glu Gly Pro  
                                     100                                      105                                      110  
 Asn Ser Phe Gln Pro Ser Asp Pro Met Leu Thr Met Val Val Asp Ser  
                                     115                                      120                                      125  
 Gly Leu Lys Asp Asp Leu Val Leu Gly Asp Pro Thr Ala Pro Arg Phe  
                                     130                                      135                                      140  
 Val Leu Trp Asn Gly Lys Leu Arg Pro Val Pro Ser Lys Leu Thr Asp  
 145                                      150                                      155                                      160  
 Leu Pro Phe Phe Asp Leu Met Ser Ile Gly Gly Lys Ile Arg Ala Gly  
                                     165                                      170                                      175  
 Phe Gly Ala Ile Gly Ile Arg Pro Ser Pro Pro Gly Arg Glu Glu Ser  
                                     180                                      185                                      190  
 Val Glu Glu Phe Val Arg Arg Asn Leu Gly Asp Glu Val Phe Glu Arg  
                                     195                                      200                                      205  
 Leu Ile Glu Pro Phe Cys Ser Gly Val Tyr Ala Gly Asp Pro Ala Lys  
                                     210                                      215                                      220  
 Leu Ser Met Lys Ala Ala Phe Gly Lys Val Trp Lys Leu Glu Glu Asn  
 225                                      230                                      235                                      240  
 Gly Gly Ser Ile Ile Gly Gly Ala Phe Lys Ala Ile Gln Ala Lys Asn  
                                     245                                      250                                      255  
 Lys Ala Pro Lys Thr Thr Arg Asp Pro Arg Leu Pro Lys Pro Lys Gly  
                                     260                                      265                                      270  
 Gln Thr Val Gly Ser Phe Arg Lys Gly Leu Thr Met Leu Pro Glu Ala  
                                     275                                      280                                      285  
 Ile Ser Ala Arg Leu Gly Asp Lys Val Lys Val Ser Trp Lys Leu Ser  
                                     290                                      295                                      300  
 Ser Ile Thr Lys Leu Ala Ser Gly Glu Tyr Ser Leu Thr Tyr Glu Thr  
 305                                      310                                      315                                      320  
 Pro Glu Gly Ile Val Thr Val Gln Ser Lys Ser Val Val Met Thr Val  
                                     325                                      330                                      335  
 Pro Ser His Val Ala Ser Ser Leu Leu Arg Pro Leu Ser Asp Ser Ala  
                                     340                                      345                                      350  
 Ala Glu Ala Leu Ser Lys Leu Tyr Tyr Pro Pro Val Ala Ala Val Ser  
                                     355                                      360                                      365  
 Ile Ser Tyr Ala Lys Glu Ala Ile Arg Ser Glu Cys Leu Ile Asp Gly  
                                     370                                      375                                      380  
 Glu Leu Lys Gly Phe Gly Gln Leu His Pro Arg Thr Gln Lys Val Glu  
 385                                      390                                      395                                      400

Thr Leu Gly Thr Ile Tyr Ser Ser Ser Leu Phe Pro Asn Arg Ala Pro  
 405 410 415  
 Pro Gly Arg Val Leu Leu Leu Asn Tyr Ile Gly Gly Ala Thr Asn Thr  
 420 425 430  
 Gly Ile Leu Ser Lys Ser Glu Gly Glu Leu Val Glu Ala Val Asp Arg  
 435 440 445  
 Asp Leu Arg Lys Met Leu Ile Lys Pro Ser Ser Thr Asp Pro Leu Val  
 450 455 460  
 Leu Gly Val Lys Leu Trp Pro Gln Ala Ile Pro Gln Phe Leu Ile Gly  
 465 470 475 480  
 His Ile Asp Leu Val Asp Ala Ala Lys Ala Ser Leu Ser Ser Ser Gly  
 485 490 495  
 His Glu Gly Leu Phe Leu Gly Gly Asn Tyr Val Ala Gly Val Ala Leu  
 500 505 510  
 Gly Arg Cys Val Glu Gly Ala Tyr Glu Thr Ala Thr Gln Val Asn Asp  
 515 520 525  
 Phe Met Ser Arg Tyr Ala Tyr Lys  
 530 535

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:21:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
  - (A) LENGTH: 1224 base pairs
  - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
  - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
  - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA
- (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO
- (iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO
- (vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:
  - (A) ORGANISM: *Oryza sativa* (rice)
- (vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:
  - (B) CLONE: pWDC-18 (NRRL B-21648)
- (ix) FEATURE:
  - (A) NAME/KEY: misc\_feature
  - (B) LOCATION: 1..936
  - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /product= "Rice protox-1 partial coding sequence"

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:21:

CGGGCTTTGA AGGCTGCATT TGGGAAGGTG TGGAGGCTGG AGGATACTGG AGGTAGCATT	60
ATTGGTGGAA CCATCAAGAC AATCCAGGAG AGGGGGAAAA ACCCCAAACC GCCGAGGGAT	120
CCCCGCCTTC CAACGCCAAA GGGGCAGACA GTTGCATCTT TCAGGAAGGG TCTGACTATG	180
CTCCCGGATG CTATTACATC TAGGTTGGGT AGCAAAGTCA AACTTTCATG GAAGTTGACA	240
AGCATTAÇAA AGTCAGACAA CAAAGGATAT GCATTAGTGT ATGAAACACC AGAAGGGGTG	300

GTCTCGGTGC AAGCTAAAAC TGTTGTCATG ACCATCCCAT CATATGTTGC TAGTGATATC 360  
 TTGCGGCCAC TTTCAGTGA TGCAGCAGAT GCTCTGTCAA TATTCTATTA TCCACCAGTT 420  
 GCTGCTGTAA CTGTTTCATA TCCAAAAGAA GCAATTAGAA AAGAATGCTT AATTGACGGA 480  
 GAGCTCCAGG GTTTCGGCCA GCTGCATCCG CGTAGTCAGG GAGTTGAGAC TTTAGGAACA 540  
 ATATATAGCT CATCACTCTT TCCAAATCGT GCTCCAGCTG GAAGGGTGTT ACTTCTGAAC 600  
 TACATAGGAG GTTCTACAAA TACAGGGATT GTTTCCAAGA CTGAAAGTGA GCTGGTAGAA 660  
 GCAGTTGACC GTGACCTCAG GAAGATGCTG ATAAATCCTA GAGCAGTGGA CCCTTTGGTC 720  
 CTTGGCGTCC GGGTATGGCC ACAAGCCATA CCACAGTTCC TCATTGGCCA TCTTGATCAT 780  
 CTTGAGGCTG CAAAATCTGC CCTGGGCAAA GGTGGGTATG ATGGATTGTT CCTCGGAGGG 840  
 AACTATGTTG CAGGAGTTGC CCTGGGCCGA TCGTTGAAG GTGCATATGA GAGTGCCTCA 900  
 CAAATATCTG ACTACTTGAC CAAGTACGCC TACAAGTGAT CAAAGTTGGC CTGCTCCTTT 960  
 TGGCACATAG ATGTGAGGCT TCTAGCAGCA AAAATTTTCA GGCATCTTT TTATCCTGAT 1020  
 TCTAATTAGT TAGAATTTAG AATTGTAGAG GAATGTTCCA TTTGCAGTTC ATAATAGTTG 1080  
 TTCAGATTTC AGCCATTCAA TTTGTGCAGC CATTTACTAT ATGTAGTATG ATCTTGTAAG 1140  
 TACTACTAAG AACAAATCAA TTATATTTTC CTGCAAGTGA CATCTTAATC GTCAGCAAAT 1200  
 CCAGTTACTA GTAAAAA AAAA 1224

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:22:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 312 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant
- (D) TOPOLOGY: not relevant

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:22:

Arg Ala Leu Lys Ala Ala Phe Gly Lys Val Trp Arg Leu Glu Asp Thr  
 1 5 10 15  
 Gly Gly Ser Ile Ile Gly Gly Thr Ile Lys Thr Ile Gln Glu Arg Gly  
 20 25 30  
 Lys Asn Pro Lys Pro Pro Arg Asp Pro Arg Leu Pro Thr Pro Lys Gly  
 35 40 45  
 Gln Thr Val Ala Ser Phe Arg Lys Gly Leu Thr Met Leu Pro Asp Ala  
 50 55 60  
 Ile Thr Ser Arg Leu Gly Ser Lys Val Lys Leu Ser Trp Lys Leu Thr  
 65 70 75 80  
 Ser Ile Thr Lys Ser Asp Asn Lys Gly Tyr Ala Leu Val Tyr Glu Thr  
 85 90 95

Pro Glu Gly Val Val Ser Val Gln Ala Lys Thr Val Val Met Thr Ile  
 100 105 110  
 Pro Ser Tyr Val Ala Ser Asp Ile Leu Arg Pro Leu Ser Ser Asp Ala  
 115 120 125  
 Ala Asp Ala Leu Ser Ile Phe Tyr Tyr Pro Pro Val Ala Ala Val Thr  
 130 135 140  
 Val Ser Tyr Pro Lys Glu Ala Ile Arg Lys Glu Cys Leu Ile Asp Gly  
 145 150 155 160  
 Glu Leu Gln Gly Phe Gly Gln Leu His Pro Arg Ser Gln Gly Val Glu  
 165 170 175  
 Thr Leu Gly Thr Ile Tyr Ser Ser Ser Leu Phe Pro Asn Arg Ala Pro  
 180 185 190  
 Ala Gly Arg Val Leu Leu Leu Asn Tyr Ile Gly Gly Ser Thr Asn Thr  
 195 200 205  
 Gly Ile Val Ser Lys Thr Glu Ser Glu Leu Val Glu Ala Val Asp Arg  
 210 215 220  
 Asp Leu Arg Lys Met Leu Ile Asn Pro Arg Ala Val Asp Pro Leu Val  
 225 230 235 240  
 Leu Gly Val Arg Val Trp Pro Gln Ala Ile Pro Gln Phe Leu Ile Gly  
 245 250 255  
 His Leu Asp His Leu Glu Ala Ala Lys Ser Ala Leu Gly Lys Gly Gly  
 260 265 270  
 Tyr Asp Gly Leu Phe Leu Gly Gly Asn Tyr Val Ala Gly Val Ala Leu  
 275 280 285  
 Gly Arg Cys Val Glu Gly Ala Tyr Glu Ser Ala Ser Gln Ile Ser Asp  
 290 295 300  
 Tyr Leu Thr Lys Tyr Ala Tyr Lys  
 305 310

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:23:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
  - (A) LENGTH: 1590 base pairs
  - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
  - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
  - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA
- (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO
- (iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO
- (vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:
  - (A) ORGANISM: Sorghum bicolor (sorghum)
- (vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:
  - (B) CLONE: pWDC-19 (NRRL B-21649)
- (ix) FEATURE:
  - (A) NAME/KEY: misc\_feature

(B) LOCATION: 1..1320  
 (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /product= "Sorghum protox-1 partial coding sequence"

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:23:

TCCACCGTCG AGCGCCCCGA GGAAGGGTAC CTCTGGGAGG AGGGTCCCAA CAGCTTCCAG	60
CCATCCGACC CCGTTCTCTC CATGGCCGTG GACAGCGGGC TGAAGGATGA CCTGGTTTTT	120
GGGGACCCCA ACGCGCCACG GTTCGTGCTG TGGGAGGGGA AGCTGAGGCC CGTGCCATCC	180
AAGCCCGCCG ACCTCCCGTT CTTCGATCTC ATGAGCATCC CTGGCAAGCT CAGGGCCGGT	240
CTCGGCGCGC TTGGCATCCG CCCGCCTGCT CCAGGCCGCG AGGAGTCAGT GGAGGAGTTT	300
GTGCGCCGCA ACCTCGGTGC TGAGGTCTTT GAGCGCCTAA TTGAGCCTTT CTGCTCAGGT	360
GTCTATGCTG GCGATCCTTC CAAGCTCAGT ATGAAGGCTG CATTTGGGAA GGTGTGGCGG	420
TTAGAAGAAG CTGGAGGTAG TATTATTGGT GGAACCATCA AGACGATTCA GGAGAGGGGC	480
AAGAATCCAA AACCACCGAG GGATCCCCGC CTTCCGAAGC CAAAAGGGCA GACAGTTGCA	540
TCTTTCAGGA AGGGTCTTGC CATGCTTCCA AATGCCATCA CATCCAGCTT GGGTAGTAAA	600
GTCAAACCTAT CATGGAAACT CACGAGCATG ACAAATCAG ATGGCAAGGG GTATGTTTTG	660
GAGTATGAAA CACCAGAAGG GGTTGTTTTG GTGCAGGCTA AAAGTGTTAT CATGACCATT	720
CCATCATATG TTGCTAGCGA CATTTTGCGT CCACTTTCAG GTGATGCTGC AGATGTTCTA	780
TCAAGATTCT ATTATCCACC AGTTGCTGCT GTAAAGGTTT CGTATCCAAA GGAAGCAATT	840
AGAAAAGAAT GCTTAATTGA TGGGGAATC CAGGGTTTTG GCCAGTTGCA TCCACGTAGT	900
CAAGGAGTTG AGACATTAGG AACAATATAC AGCTCATCAC TCTTTCAAA TCGTGCTCCT	960
GCTGGTAGGG TGTTACTTCT AAACCTACATA GGAGGTGCTA CAAACACAGG AATTGTTTCC	1020
AAGACTGAAA GTGAGCTGGT AGAAGCAGTT GACCGTGACC TCCGAAAAAT GCTTATAAAT	1080
CCTACAGCAG TGGACCCTTT AGTCCTTGGT GTCCGAGTTT GGCCACAAGC CATACCTCAG	1140
TTCTTGGTAG GACATCTTGA TCTTCTGGAG GCCGAAAAT CTGCCCTGGA CCAAGGTGGC	1200
TATAATGGGC TGTTCCTAGG AGGGAACCTAT GTTGCAGGAG TTGCCCTGGG CAGATGCATT	1260
GAGGGCGCAT ATGAGAGTGC CGCGCAAATA TATGACTTCT TGACCAAGTA CGCCTACAAG	1320
TGATGGAAGA AGTGGAGCGC TGCTTGTTAA TTGTTATGTT GCATAGATGA GGTGAGACCA	1380
GGAGTAGTAA AAGGCGTCAC GAGTATTTTT CATTCTTATT TTGTAAATTG CACTTCTGTT	1440
TTTTTTTCCT GTCAGTAATT AGTTAGATTT TAGTTATGTA GGAGATTGTT GTGTTCACTG	1500
CCCTACAAAA GAATTTTTAT TTTGCATTCT TTTATGAGAG CTGTGCAGAC TTATGTAACG	1560
TTTACTGTA AGTATCAACA AAATCAAATA	1590

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:24:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 440 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: not relevant

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:24:

```

Ser Thr Val Glu Arg Pro Glu Glu Gly Tyr Leu Trp Glu Glu Gly Pro
1      5      10      15
Asn Ser Phe Gln Pro Ser Asp Pro Val Leu Ser Met Ala Val Asp Ser
20     25     30
Gly Leu Lys Asp Asp Leu Val Phe Gly Asp Pro Asn Ala Pro Arg Phe
35     40     45
Val Leu Trp Glu Gly Lys Leu Arg Pro Val Pro Ser Lys Pro Ala Asp
50     55     60
Leu Pro Phe Phe Asp Leu Met Ser Ile Pro Gly Lys Leu Arg Ala Gly
65     70     75     80
Leu Gly Ala Leu Gly Ile Arg Pro Pro Ala Pro Gly Arg Glu Glu Ser
85     90     95
Val Glu Glu Phe Val Arg Arg Asn Leu Gly Ala Glu Val Phe Glu Arg
100    105    110
Leu Ile Glu Pro Phe Cys Ser Gly Val Tyr Ala Gly Asp Pro Ser Lys
115    120    125
Leu Ser Met Lys Ala Ala Phe Gly Lys Val Trp Arg Leu Glu Glu Ala
130    135    140
Gly Gly Ser Ile Ile Gly Gly Thr Ile Lys Thr Ile Gln Glu Arg Gly
145    150    155    160
Lys Asn Pro Lys Pro Pro Arg Asp Pro Arg Leu Pro Lys Pro Lys Gly
165    170    175
Gln Thr Val Ala Ser Phe Arg Lys Gly Leu Ala Met Leu Pro Asn Ala
180    185    190
Ile Thr Ser Ser Leu Gly Ser Lys Val Lys Leu Ser Trp Lys Leu Thr
195    200    205
Ser Met Thr Lys Ser Asp Gly Lys Gly Tyr Val Leu Glu Tyr Glu Thr
210    215    220
Pro Glu Gly Val Val Leu Val Gln Ala Lys Ser Val Ile Met Thr Ile
225    230    235    240
Pro Ser Tyr Val Ala Ser Asp Ile Leu Arg Pro Leu Ser Gly Asp Ala
245    250    255
Ala Asp Val Leu Ser Arg Phe Tyr Tyr Pro Pro Val Ala Ala Val Thr
260    265    270
Val Ser Tyr Pro Lys Glu Ala Ile Arg Lys Glu Cys Leu Ile Asp Gly
275    280    285

```

Glu Leu Gln Gly Phe Gly Gln Leu His Pro Arg Ser Gln Gly Val Glu  
 290 295 300  
 Thr Leu Gly Thr Ile Tyr Ser Ser Ser Leu Phe Pro Asn Arg Ala Pro  
 305 310 315 320  
 Ala Gly Arg Val Leu Leu Leu Asn Tyr Ile Gly Gly Ala Thr Asn Thr  
 325 330 335  
 Gly Ile Val Ser Lys Thr Glu Ser Glu Leu Val Glu Ala Val Asp Arg  
 340 345 350  
 Asp Leu Arg Lys Met Leu Ile Asn Pro Thr Ala Val Asp Pro Leu Val  
 355 360 365  
 Leu Gly Val Arg Val Trp Pro Gln Ala Ile Pro Gln Phe Leu Val Gly  
 370 375 380  
 His Leu Asp Leu Leu Glu Ala Ala Lys Ser Ala Leu Asp Gln Gly Gly  
 385 390 395 400  
 Tyr Asn Gly Leu Phe Leu Gly Gly Asn Tyr Val Ala Gly Val Ala Leu  
 405 410 415  
 Gly Arg Cys Ile Glu Gly Ala Tyr Glu Ser Ala Ala Gln Ile Tyr Asp  
 420 425 430  
 Phe Leu Thr Lys Tyr Ala Tyr Lys  
 435 440

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:25:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
  - (A) LENGTH: 93 base pairs
  - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
  - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
  - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: other nucleic acid
  - (A) DESCRIPTION: /desc = "maize protox-1 intron sequence"

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:25:

GTACGCTCCT CGCTGGCGCC GCAGCGTCTT CTTCTCAGAC TCATGCGCAG CCATGGAATT 60  
 GAGATGCTGA ATGGATTTTA TACGCGCGCG CAG 93

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:26:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
  - (A) LENGTH: 2606 base pairs
  - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
  - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
  - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: DNA (genomic)
- (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO
- (iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO



(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:  
 (A) ORGANISM: Beta vulgaris (sugar beet)

(vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:  
 (B) CLONE: pWDC-20 (NRRL B-21650)

(ix) FEATURE:  
 (A) NAME/KEY: misc\_feature  
 (B) LOCATION: 2601..2606  
 (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /note= "SalI site"

(ix) FEATURE:  
 (A) NAME/KEY: misc\_feature  
 (B) LOCATION: complement (1..538)  
 (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /note= "partial cDNA of sugar beet  
 protox-1"

(ix) FEATURE:  
 (A) NAME/KEY: misc\_feature  
 (B) LOCATION: 539..2606  
 (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /note= "sugar beet protox-1  
 promoter region (partial sequence of the ~ 3 kb PstI-SalI fragment subcloned  
 from pWDC-20)"

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:26:

CTGCAGGGGG AGGGAAAGAG AGACCGCGAC GGTGAGGGAG GGGAGACCGC GACGGTGAGG	60
GAGGGGAGAA CGCGACGGTG AGGGAGGGGA GAACGCGATG GTGAGGGAGG GGAGAACGCG	120
ACGCGCAGGG GAGGGGGATA ACTCGACGGT GCAGGGAGGT GAGGGGGACG ACGTGACGGC	180
GCAGGGGAGG GGGGAACCGT CGCGGGAAGG GGAAGACCGG GGGGCCGACA AGGTGGTGT	240
ACTGGGGTAG GGAGAGGCGG CGTGGAGAAT AGTAACAGAG GGAGGAGTGG TGGTGCTAGG	300
GTGGAAGAAG GGTAAGAAAG AGGAAGAAAG AGAATTAACA TTATCTTAAC CAAACACCAC	360
TCTAAATCTA AGGGTTTTCT TTTCCTTTCC TCTCCTCTCC CTTTCTTGAT TCCATTCCCT	420
TTACCCCGTT GCAACCAAAC GCCCCCTTAT TATGGACCGG AGGAAGTATG TAGAGATGGT	480
CACAAAATA CTTAAGCTGG TAACTTATAA ATATACTGGG TATTAAATGA ATTAAGTGCC	540
CACAAAATGA CTATAAATTA CTTCGTAATC TTTAGGAACT ATGTTGGTCA CGAAATAACA	600
TAAAACTGGT TATTTAATGG CTTTATGTAG GACTGCATT CATAAATATA TTTCTAACAT	660
AATCGTGGA TGTAGGTGTT TTATAACACA AGGATTAGGT TTACACCAAT GTCATTTTCA	720
TTAGAATGTA GTTAGAATCA CTTTGGAAC TTTGAAGAGTG ATGACACATT TTTATTATGC	780
TTTTATGAAA TGTCTTTGTG GTTTTATGA TAGTATTGAG TTTAAGGCAA GTTGGAAGTA	840
TATGATGGAG AAGTACAGTA TATAGGTGAC AATTGGTTTG CTTGTTTCTA TGAGTTGAAA	900
GATAAGTAGT ACACGACACT GAGCAATGAC CTCTTCTTAG TTGTAATTTT GTCTTCTCGA	960
CGTAGTGAAA GTACAAACAA GATTATGGCT TTCAAGCTTC CAAGATAACG AGATTGTATG	1020
AATTTTGTGG TGTATTTCAC ATCATTGTTT TACGTTGGAG ACAAACTAAA ACCAATGATG	1080
AGTTTGTGGA TTCGAGATTT GCCCCTAAGT CTTATTTACC CATGGCAAGC ATGCTGAAAC	1140

ATGTTAGTCA AACTTACACA GCTACAATGT TTAGGGATTT TGAGCAAAAA ATTTGGGTAT 1200  
 TCTTTGGGTA CCATTATGTG AGTTGTTGAC TATGGATTAA AAAAAATCAC TATATAAAGT 1260  
 CTGGAATGAG AAGCATCCGC AATTGACACA CCATGTTACT TTGATTGTTT CAACAAGTTT 1320  
 ATTAGATGTA TTTGTAGGAA TTTTGAAGAG GCGGAGATGT TGTGTTATAA TTGCTTTGGG 1380  
 GGTGCTTCAC ATGCACTCTG TTAGTGAGAC ATCTTCAGCT TATATTTTAA GGCGGTTAGT 1440  
 GAGTATGATT TTTTTTTTTC AAACCTTTTCG ATTTCCATGT AATTAAAAAA GGTGTTTGAT 1500  
 AAATACATGT TAAGATAGCC AAGAAAAGGC AACTTTCAAA CAAATAAAAA AAATTAAGTC 1560  
 GCTTAATCAT TTTTCCAAGT ACTTTTTTACT TTTAACACCA CTTATTACTG AATCTATAGC 1620  
 CGTTAAGAAT GCATTTTCAC GCTCATACAT GCAAATCAAG AACCTCCTCA TTGAAGGAGA 1680  
 TAATTTAGTC CTCATAAACC CCGTTAAAGA CATTTTTAGC ATCCAGAGAA ATTTTCGATTC 1740  
 AGTTAAAATT GCATATATAA CCAGAGAAAC AAATTCAGAT GTTAGTCAGT CCAGCTACAT 1800  
 AGGTCAATGC CTGAGAGTTT AAAAGAATCC GTATCCTTAA GCATAAGTAG GTATTGAGGT 1860  
 GAGTTACAAA GGTAAGTTAC CGGTTACGCA CCACCTCCAC CAAACAAGTA TGGTTAGAAG 1920  
 ATACATGTAA TCGTTTATTT AGAGTACTAT TTATAAAAAA CTTTTTAACT AGAAACAGTT 1980  
 GTTTCATTTT GATATAAGGT TAATTAGAAT TCCCGAGCAA GCAAGAAGGG GATATAGAGG 2040  
 ATAAGGAGGG CGAGAGAGCG AGAGAGAGAT GAAATCAATG GCGTTATCAA ACTGCATTCC 2100  
 ACAGACACAG TGCATGCCAT TGCACAGCAG CGGGCATTAC AGGGGCAATT GTATCATGTT 2160  
 GTCAATTCCA TGTAGTTTAA TTGGAAGACG AGGTTATTAT TCACATAAGA AGAGGAGGAT 2220  
 GAGCATGAGT TGCAGCACAA GCTCAGGCTC AAAGTCAGCG GTTAAAGAAG CAGGATCAGG 2280  
 ATCAGGATCA GGAGCAGGAG GATTGCTAGA CTGCGTAATC GTTGGAGGTG GAATTAGCGG 2340  
 GCTTTGCATC GCGCAGGCTC TTTGTACAAA ACAGTCCTCT TTATCCCCAA ATTTTATAGT 2400  
 GACAGAGGCC AAAGACAGAG TTGGCGGCAA CATCGTCACT GTGGAGGCCG ATGGCTATAT 2460  
 CTGGGAGGAG GGACCCAATA GCTTCCAGCC TTCCGACGCG GTGCTCACCA TGGCGGTAAT 2520  
 TCTGTCTCTT CATTATTCAT AATCATAATT CAATTCAATT CAATTCCTAA CGTGGAATGT 2580  
 GGAATGTGGC ATGTGCGTAG GTCGAC 2606

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:27:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 31 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: other nucleic acid

- (A) DESCRIPTION: /desc = "Pclp\_P1a - plastid *clpP* gene promoter top strand PCR primer"

## (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO

(ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: misc\_feature
- (B) LOCATION: 4..9
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /note= "EcoRI restriction site"

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:27:

GCGGAATTCA TACTTATTTA TCATTAGAAA G

31

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:28:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 32 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: other nucleic acid

(A) DESCRIPTION: /desc = "Pclp\_P1b - plastid clpP gene promoter bottom strand PCR primer"

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO

(ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: misc\_feature
- (B) LOCATION: 4..9
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /note= "XbaI restriction site"

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:28:

GCGTCTAGAA AGAACTAAAT ACTATATTTTC AC

32

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:29:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 30 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: other nucleic acid

(A) DESCRIPTION: /desc = "Pclp\_P2b - plastid clpP gene promoter bottom strand PCR primer"

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO

(ix) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY: misc\_feature
- (B) LOCATION: 4..9
- (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /note= "NcoI restriction site"

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:29:

GCGCCATGGT AAATGAAAGA AAGAACTAAA

30

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:30:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
  - (A) LENGTH: 30 base pairs
  - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
  - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
  - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: other nucleic acid
  - (A) DESCRIPTION: /desc = "Trps16\_P1a - plastid rps16 gene 3' untranslated region *XbaI/HindIII* top strand PCR primer"
- (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO
- (iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO
- (ix) FEATURE:
  - (A) NAME/KEY: misc\_feature
  - (B) LOCATION: 4..9
  - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /note= "*XbaI* restriction site"

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:30:

GCGTCTAGAT CAACCGAAAT TCAATTAAGG

30

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:31:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
  - (A) LENGTH: 27 base pairs
  - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
  - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
  - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: other nucleic acid
  - (A) DESCRIPTION: /desc = "Trps16\_p1b - plastid rps16 gene 3' untranslated region *XbaI/HindIII* bottom strand PCR primer"
- (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO
- (iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO
- (ix) FEATURE:
  - (A) NAME/KEY: misc\_feature
  - (B) LOCATION: 4..9
  - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /note= "*HindIII* restriction site"

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:31:

CGCAAGCTTC AATGGAAGCA ATGATAA

27

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:32:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
  - (A) LENGTH: 36 base pairs
  - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
  - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
  - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO

36

(iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO

40

(iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO

177

GGGACCATGG ATTGTGTGAT TGTCGGCGGA GG

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:35:

```
(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: other nucleic acid
      (A) DESCRIPTION: /desc = "APRTXPlb - bottom strand PCR
primer for amplifying the 5' portion of the mutant Arabidopsis
protox gene"
```

(iv) ANTI-SENSE: NO

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:35:

CTCCGCTCTC CAGCTTAGTG ATAC

24

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:36:

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

```
(ix) FEATURE:
      (A) NAME/KEY: misc_feature
      (B) LOCATION: 1..308
      (D) OTHER INFORMATION: /product= "Sugar cane protox-1 partial
coding sequence"
```

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:36:

TTTCCAAGAC	TGAAAGTGAG	CTGGTAGAAG	CAGTTGACCG	TGACCTCCGG	AAAATGCTTA	60
TAAATCCTAC	AGCAGTGGAC	CCTTTAGTCC	TTGGTGTCGG	AGTTTGGCCA	CAAGCCATAC	120
CTCAGTTCCT	GGTAGGACAT	CTTGATCTTC	TGGAGGCCGC	AAAATCTGCC	CTGGACCGAG	180
GTGGCTACGA	TGGGCTGTTC	CTAGGAGGGA	ACTATGTTGC	AGGAGTTGCC	CTAGGCAGAT	240
GCGTTGAGGG	CGCGTATGAG	AGTGCCTCGC	AAATATATGA	CTTCTTGACC	AAGTATGCCT	300
ACAAGTGATG	AAAGAAGTGG	AGTGCTGCCT	GTTAATTGTT	ATGTTGCATA	GATGAGGTGA	360
GACCAGGAGT	AGTAAAAGCG	TTACGAGTAT	TTTTCATTC	TATTTTGTA	ATTGCACTTC	420
TGGTTTTTTC	CTGTCAGTAA	TTAGTTAGAT	TTTAGTTCTG	TAGGAGATTG	TTCTGTTTAC	480

TGCCCTACAA AAGAATTTTT ATTTTGCATT CGTTTATGAG AGCTGTGCAG ACTTATGTAG 540  
 CGTTTTTCTG TAAGTACCAA CAAAATCAAA TACTATTCTG TAAGAGCTAA CAGAATGTGC 600  
 AACTGAGATT GCCTTGGATG AAAAAAAAAA AAA 633

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:37:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 101 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:37:

Ser Lys Thr Glu Ser Glu Leu Val Glu Ala Val Asp Arg Asp Leu Arg  
 1 5 10 15  
 Lys Met Leu Ile Asn Pro Thr Ala Val Asp Pro Leu Val Leu Gly Val  
 20 25 30  
 Arg Val Trp Pro Gln Ala Ile Pro Gln Phe Leu Val Gly His Leu Asp  
 35 40 45  
 Leu Leu Glu Ala Ala Lys Ser Ala Leu Asp Arg Gly Gly Tyr Asp Gly  
 50 55 60  
 Leu Phe Leu Gly Gly Asn Tyr Val Ala Gly Val Ala Leu Gly Arg Cys  
 65 70 75 80  
 Val Glu Gly Ala Tyr Glu Ser Ala Ser Gln Ile Tyr Asp Phe Leu Thr  
 85 90 95  
 Lys Tyr Ala Tyr Lys  
 100